How to obtain more information
For information about this product or the wide range of services and data available from Statistics Canada, visit our website, www.statcan.gc.ca, email us at infostats@statcan.gc.ca, or telephone us, Monday to Friday from 8:30 a.m. to 4:30 p.m., at the following numbers:

Statistics Canada's National Contact Centre
Toll-free telephone (Canada and United States):
- Inquiries line 1-800-263-1136
- National telecommunications device for the hearing impaired 1-800-363-7629
- Fax line 1-877-287-4369

Local or international calls:
- Inquiries line 1-613-951-8116
- Fax line 1-613-951-0581

Depository Services Program
- Inquiries line 1-800-635-7943
- Fax line 1-800-565-7757

To access this product
This product, Catalogue no. 98-301-X, is available free in electronic format. To obtain a single issue, visit our website, www.statcan.gc.ca, and browse by “Key resource” > “Publications.”

Standards of service to the public
Statistics Canada is committed to serving its clients in a prompt, reliable and courteous manner. To this end, Statistics Canada has developed standards of service that its employees observe. To obtain a copy of these service standards, please contact Statistics Canada toll-free at 1-800-263-1136. The service standards are also published on www.statcan.gc.ca under “About us” > “The agency” > “Providing services to Canadians.”

Published by authority of the Minister responsible for Statistics Canada
© Minister of Industry, 2012
All rights reserved. Use of this publication is governed by the Statistics Canada Open Licence Agreement (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/reference/copyright-droit-auteur-eng.htm).

Cette publication est aussi disponible en français.

Note of appreciation
Canada owes the success of its statistical system to a long-standing partnership between Statistics Canada, the citizens of Canada, its businesses, governments and other institutions. Accurate and timely statistical information could not be produced without their continued co-operation and goodwill.

Standard symbols
The following symbols are used in Statistics Canada publications:

- not available for any reference period
-.. not available for a specific reference period
... not applicable
0 true zero or a value rounded to zero
0\(^p\) value rounded to 0 (zero) where there is a meaningful distinction between true zero and the value that was rounded
p preliminary
r revised
x suppressed to meet the confidentiality requirements of the Statistics Act
E use with caution
F too unreliable to be published
* significantly different from reference category (p < 0.05)
# Table of contents

## Introduction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of new variables and terms</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of deleted variables and terms</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New terminology for certain variables</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of abbreviations</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Population universe

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to the population universe</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census farm</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm operator</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural farm population</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demography:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common-law status</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of birth</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal marital status</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marital status</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Institutional resident</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence of children</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationship to household reference person (Person 1)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usual place of residence</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First official language spoken</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home language</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home language – Part A</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home language – Part B</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge of official languages</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother tongue</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Family universe

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to the family universe</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census family</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census family composition</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census family household composition</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census family status</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census family structure</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census family type</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic family</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic family status</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic family structure</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic family type</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household living arrangements</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table of contents

## Household universe

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to the household universe</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household, collective</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household outside Canada</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household, private</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household size</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household type</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Dwelling universe

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to the dwelling universe</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collective dwelling</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwelling</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwelling, marginal, occupied by usual residents</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwelling, private</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwelling, private, occupied by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwelling, private, occupied by usual residents</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwelling, regular</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwelling, unoccupied private</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural type of dwelling</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Geography universe

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to the geography universe</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geographic attributes:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Adjusted counts</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ)</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Geographic code</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Land area</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Population density</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geographic classifications:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Standard Geographical Classification (SGC)</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Statistical Area Classification (SAC)</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geographic files:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Cartographic boundary files (CBFs)</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Digital boundary files (DBFs)</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Road network file (RNF)</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geographic infrastructure:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- National Geographic Database (NGD)</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI)</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geographic units:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Census agglomeration (CA)</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Census agricultural region (CAR)</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Census consolidated subdivision (CCS)</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Census division (CD)</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Census subdivision (CSD)</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Census subdivision – previous census</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Census tract (CT)</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Core, fringe and rural area</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Designated place (DPL)</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Dissemination area (DA)</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Dissemination block (DB)</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Economic region (ER)</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Federal electoral district (FED)</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Geographical region of Canada</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of tables

1  Geographic units by province and territory, 2011 Census.................................................................68
2  Population distribution by the Statistical Area Classification (SAC), 2006 adjusted population and 2011
geography, 2006 Census.......................................................................................................................78
3  Number of census subdivisions by the Statistical Area Classification (SAC), 2011 Census ............79
4  Census division types by province and territory, 2011 Census ..........................................................88
5  Census subdivision types by province and territory, 2011 Census .....................................................102
6  Designated place types by province and territory, 2011 Census ........................................................113
7  Distribution of population by size of population centre, 2001 and 2006 censuses .......................122
8  Abbreviations and codes for provinces and territories, 2011 Census ...............................................125
9  First character of the postal code^OM and corresponding province, territory or region ...............145

List of appendices

A  Census questionnaire content and derived variables since Confederation.......................................149
B  2011 Census questionnaire ................................................................................................................153
C  Data quality, confidentiality and random rounding..............................................................................156
D  Mother tongue and home language: classifications from 2011, 2006 and 2001..............................160
Introduction

The 2011 Census Dictionary provides definitions for all the concepts, variables and geographic terms of the 2011 Census.

The dictionary is divided into five sections. The first four focus on census ‘universes’, i.e., groups of variables pertinent to a subject. Terms and variables are listed alphabetically by specific characteristics within each section. The fifth section provides information on the geographic terms used in the Census of Canada.

The four census universes are:

- **Population universe** – Provides information on the characteristics of Canada’s population, such as demography and language.
- **Family universe** – Pertains to the characteristics of families units. Both census and economic families are included.
- **Household universe** – Covers the characteristics of a person or a group of persons occupying a private dwelling.
- **Dwelling universe** – Describes the characteristics of dwelling units in Canada.

The Census Dictionary presents the information in the following format:

- **Short definition**
  - This jargon-free definition has been simplified to make the information more accessible. To maintain uniformity in the document format, ‘Not applicable’ appears under this heading for the variables and geographic terms that do not have a short definition.

- **Detailed definition**
  - This is a comprehensive, more technical definition of each variable or term used in all census products.
  - A variable is a subject about which information can be retrieved from the census database.

- **Census(es)**
  - This heading indicates the census years in which the term or variable was used, and whether the data were collected from the entire population or from a sample. If the data were collected from a sample, the sampling size is given.

- **Reported for**
  - This heading gives information on the population or subpopulation for which the data are provided. ‘Not applicable’ appears under this heading in the case of geographic terms.

- **Question no(s).**
  - This heading indicates the census question number(s) to which a variable is associated. ‘Not applicable’ appears under this heading in the case of geographic terms.

There are direct variables, derived variables and coded variables. For example, the question on the sex of respondents has two response categories: male and female. These categories correspond exactly to the information in the database. For this reason, Sex is said to be a direct variable. On the other hand, first official language spoken is referred to as a derived variable because the information in the database does not correspond to a single question on the questionnaire. Rather it is derived from the responses to the questions on knowledge of official languages, mother tongue and language spoken most often at home.

Coded variables are written responses that have been classified according to a predetermined classification system.
Responses

This heading shows the response categories or classifications of the variable. ‘Not applicable’ appears under this heading in the case of geographic terms.

Remarks

This heading provides any additional detailed information (for example, on the comparability with previous censuses) which may help users to better understand and use the data.

In the section on geography, the user will find a subsection entitled ’Changes prior to 2006’, in which all changes brought to the term in the 2001 Census or in previous censuses are indicated.

The geography universe defines terms related to geographical concepts, infrastructure, products and services.

Date

If a modification is brought to one of the variables, terms or appendices, a date will be incorporated to indicate when the modification was done (e.g., modified on March 14, 2012).

List of new variables and terms

The 2011 Census consisted of the same eight questions that appeared on the 2006 Census short-form questionnaire (covering basic demographic topics such as age, sex, marital status, mother tongue and consent to future release of personal information), plus two additional language questions on knowledge of official languages and languages spoken at home.

The 2011 Census Dictionary includes new variables and terms. They are:

Family universe

Intact family
Stepfamily
Simple stepfamily
Complex stepfamily

Geography

For more information, see the Introduction to the geography universe.

Core, fringe and rural area
Geographical region of Canada

List of deleted variables and terms

The following entries, which were included in the 2006 Census Dictionary, have been excluded from the 2011 Census.

Family universe

Census family household composition
Census family type
New terminology for certain variables

Prior to 2011, 'Dwelling, private, occupied solely by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons' was referred to as 'Dwelling, private, occupied by foreign and/or temporary residents' in the Census Dictionary.

The term 'population centre' replaced 'urban area.' For more information, see a note titled 'From urban areas to population centres,' available on our website, which explains the new terminology and classification of population centres.

List of abbreviations

Provinces and territories

PR or Prov. – Province
Terr. – Territory
N.L. – Newfoundland and Labrador
P.E.I. – Prince Edward Island
N.S. – Nova Scotia
N.B. – New Brunswick
Que. – Quebec
Ont. – Ontario
Man. – Manitoba
Sask. – Saskatchewan
Alta. – Alberta
B.C. – British Columbia
Y.T. – Yukon
N.W.T. – Northwest Territories
Nvt. – Nunavut

Census geographic areas

CA – Census agglomeration
CAR – Census agricultural region
CCS – Census consolidated subdivision
CD – Census division
CMA – Census metropolitan area
CSD – Census subdivision
CT – Census tract
DA – Dissemination area
DB – Dissemination block
DPL – Designated place
ER – Economic region
FED – Federal electoral district
FSA – Forward sortation area
LOC – Locality
MIZ – Census metropolitan area influenced zone
POPCTR – Population centre
PR or Prov. – Province
Terr. – Territory

**Census division types**

CDR – Census division / Division de recensement
CT – County / Comté
CTY – County
DIS – District
DM – District municipality
MRC – Municipalité régionale de comté
RD – Regional district
REG – Region
RM – Regional municipality
TÉ – Territoire équivalent
TER – Territory / Territoire
UC – United counties
Census subdivision types

C – City / Cité
CC – Chartered community
CG – Community government
CN – Crown colony / Colonie de la couronne
COM – Community
CT – Canton (municipalité de)
CU – Cantons unis (municipalité de)
CV – City / Ville
CY – City
DM – District municipality
HAM – Hamlet
ID – Improvement district
IGD – Indian government district
IM – Island municipality
IRI – Indian reserve / Réserve indienne
LGD – Local government district
LOT – Township and royalty
M – Municipality / Municipalité
MD – Municipal district
MÉ – Municipalité
MU – Municipality
NH – Northern hamlet
NL – Nisga’a land
NO – Unorganized / Non organisé
NV – Northern village
P – Parish / Paroisse (municipalité de)
PE – Paroisse (municipalité de)
RCR – Rural community / Communauté rurale
RDA – Regional district electoral area
RG – Region
RGM – Regional municipality
RM – Rural municipality
RV – Resort village
S-É – Indian settlement / Établissement indien
SA – Special area
SC – Subdivision of county municipality / Subdivision municipalité de comté
SÉ – Settlement / Établissement
SET – Settlement
SG – Self-government / Autonomie gouvernementale
SM – Specialized municipality
SNO – Subdivision of unorganized / Subdivision non organisée
SV – Summer village
T – Town
TC – Terres réservées aux Cris
TI – Terre inuite
TK – Terres réservées aux Naskapis
TL – Teslin land
TP – Township
TV – Town / Ville
V – Ville
VC – Village cri
VK – Village naskapi
VL – Village
VN – Village nordique
Designated place types

CFA Class IV area – Nova Scotia
DMU Dissolved municipality – Ontario, Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta
DPL Designated place – Newfoundland and Labrador
IRI Indian reserve / Réserve indienne – British Columbia
IST Island trust – British Columbia
LNC Localité non constituée – Quebec
LSB Local service board – Ontario
LSD Local service district – New Brunswick
LUD Local urban district – Manitoba
MDI Municipalité dissoute – Quebec
MDP Municipal defined places – Ontario
MET Métis settlement – Alberta
NCM Northern community – Manitoba
NVL Nisga’a village – British Columbia
OHM Organized hamlet – Saskatchewan
SE Aboriginal settlement – Yukon
UNP Unincorporated place – Alberta, British Columbia
UUC Unincorporated urban centre – Manitoba

Others

% – Percentage
AANDC – Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development Canada
AMF – Area master file
APS – Aboriginal Peoples Survey
BFDF – Block-face data file
CANCEIS – Canadian Census Edit and Imputation System
CARTLIB – Cartographic library
CBF – Cartographic boundary file
CMHC – Canada Housing and Mortgage Corporation
DBF – Digital boundary file
DCF – Digital cartographic file
DCW – Digital chart of the world
Diff. – Difference
E & I – Edit and imputation
GIS – Geographic information system
GNBC – Geographic Names Board of Canada
GRS – Geodetic reference system
km² – Square kilometre
m – Metre
MP – Member of Parliament
n.e.c. – Not elsewhere classified
n.i.e. – Not included elsewhere
n.o.s. – Not otherwise specified
NAD – North American Datum
NGB – National Geographic Base
NGD – National Geographic Database
NRCan – Natural Resources Canada
NTDB – National Topographic Database
PCCF – Postal code conversion file
PCFRF – Postal codes by federal riding file
QC – Quality control
RNF – Road network file
RO – Representation Order
SAC – Statistical Area Classification
SDI – Spatial Data Infrastructure
SGC – Standard Geographical Classification
UN – United Nations
UTM – Universal transverse mercator
vs – Versus
Introduction to the population universe

The population universe includes variables that provide information about individuals, covering demographic characteristics and language. See Figure 16 for a list of these variables.

The population universe (target population) of the 2011 Census includes the following groups:

- Canadian citizens (by birth or by naturalization) and landed immigrants (permanent residents) with a usual place of residence in Canada.
- Canadian citizens (by birth or by naturalization) and landed immigrants (permanent residents) who are abroad either on a military base or attached to a diplomatic mission.
- Canadian citizens (by birth or by naturalization) and landed immigrants (permanent residents) at sea or in port aboard merchant vessels under Canadian registry or Canadian government vessels.
- Persons with a usual place of residence in Canada who are claiming refugee status and family members living with them.
- Persons with a usual place of residence in Canada who hold study permits and family members living with them.
- Persons with a usual place of residence in Canada who hold work permits and family members living with them.

For census purposes, these last three groups of people are referred to as 'non-permanent residents.' They have been included since 1991. Foreign residents are excluded from the population universe. Foreign residents are persons who belong to the following groups:

- Government representatives of another country attached to the embassy, high commission or other diplomatic body of that country in Canada, and members of their families living with them.
- Members of the Armed Forces of another country who are stationed in Canada, and family members living with them.
- Residents of another country visiting Canada temporarily (for example, a foreign visitor on vacation or on business, with or without a visitor's permit).
Figure 16  Population universe variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total population</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common-law status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First official language spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge of official languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal marital status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marital status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother tongue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationship to household reference person (Person 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural farm population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Agriculture: **Census farm**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Refers to a farm, ranch or other agricultural operation that produces at least one of the following products intended for sale: crops, livestock, poultry, animal products, greenhouse or nursery products, Christmas trees, mushrooms, sod, honey or bees, and maple syrup products.

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

A farm, ranch or other agricultural operation producing agricultural products for sale. Also includes: feedlots, greenhouses, mushroom houses and nurseries; farms producing Christmas trees, fur, game, sod, maple syrup or fruit and berries; beekeeping and poultry hatchery operations; operations with alternative livestock (bison, deer, elk, llamas, alpacas, wild boars, etc.) or alternative poultry (ostriches, emus, etc.), when the animal or derived products are intended for sale; backyard gardens if agricultural products are intended for sale; operations involved in boarding horses, riding stables and stables for housing and/or training horses even if no agriculture products are sold. Sales in the previous 12 months are not required, but there must be the intention to sell.

**Note:** For the Yukon, Nunavut and Northwest Territories only, the definition also includes operations involved in the following:

- herding wild animals (such as caribou and muskox)
- breeding sled dogs
- horse outfitting and rigging
- harvesting indigenous plants and berries.

Reported for: All farms

Question no.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Not applicable

Notes:

1. For the 1981 and 1986 censuses, a census farm was defined as a farm, ranch or other agricultural holding with sales of agricultural products of $250 or more during the previous 12 months. Agricultural holdings with anticipated sales of $250 or more were also included.

2. For the 1976 Census, a census farm was defined as a farm, ranch or other agricultural holding of one acre or more with sales of agricultural products of $1,200 or more during the year 1975. The basic unit for which a questionnaire was collected was termed 'agricultural holding'. This term was defined as a farm, ranch or other agricultural holding of one acre or more with sales of agricultural products of $50 or more during the 12-month period prior to the Census Day.

3. Prior to the 1976 Census, a census farm was defined as a farm, ranch or other agricultural holding of one acre or more with sales of agricultural products of $50 or more during the 12-month period prior to the Census Day.

Agriculture: Farm operator

Part A – Short definition:

Refers to those persons responsible for the management decisions made in the operation of the census farm.

Part B – Detailed definition:

Those persons responsible for the management decisions in operating an agricultural operation. Can be owners, tenants or hired managers of the agricultural operation, including those responsible for management decisions pertinent to particular aspects of the farm — planting, harvesting, raising animals, marketing and sales, and making capital purchases and other financial decisions. Not included are accountants, lawyers, veterinarians, crop advisors, herbicide consultants, etc. who make recommendations affecting the agricultural operation but are not ultimately responsible for management decisions.


Reported for: Total population

Question nos.: Derived variable: Questions 1, 2 and 3 of Form 6, Census of Agriculture questionnaire

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Not applicable

Note:

1. Prior to the 1991 Census, the farm operator referred to only one person who was responsible for the day-to-day decisions made in the operation of an agricultural holding.
Because only one operator was listed for each census farm, the number of operators was the same as the number of census farms. Beginning in 1991, up to three operators per operation could be listed on the questionnaire.

Agriculture: **Rural farm population**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Refers to all persons living in rural areas who are members of the households of farm operators living on their census farms for any length of time during the 12-month period prior to the census.

**Censuses:**


**Reported for:**

Rural population

**Question no.:**

Derived variable

**Responses:**

Not applicable

**Remarks:**

Not applicable

**Notes:**

1. Prior to 1991, only one farm operator was reported per census farm. Since 1991, up to three farm operators could be reported per census farm. Because of this change, the rural farm population count now includes all persons living in rural areas on a census farm and in the households of the first, second and third operators; before 1991, the rural farm population count included all persons living in rural areas on a census farm and in the household of the first operator. It should be noted that most of the second and third operators (usually a spouse or a child) of census farms reside in the same household as the first operator and would most likely have been included in the rural farm population under the previous method of reporting.

2. Prior to the 1981 Census, the rural farm population was defined as all persons living in rural areas in dwellings situated on census farms.

Demography: **Age**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Refers to the age at last birthday before the reference date, that is, before May 10, 2011.
Demography: **Common-law status**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Common-law refers to two people living together as a couple but not legally married to each other.

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Common-law refers to two people living together as a couple but not legally married to each other. They may be of opposite sex or of the same sex.


**Reported for:** Total population

**Question no.:** Direct variable: Question 5

**Responses:** Yes; No

**Remarks:** In the 1981 and 1986 censuses, people living common law could report their relationship by using one of the response categories in the question on relationship to Person 1; they were nonetheless included in the category 'Married' for purposes of data on marital status. For more information, see Marital status.

Since 2001, the response category 'Yes' includes same-sex common-law partners.

All persons under 15 years of age are considered to be not living common law.

Demography: **Date of birth**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Refers to the day, month and year of birth.

Reported for: Total population

Question no.: Direct variable: Question 3

Responses: May 10, 1901 to May 9, 2011

Remarks: In 1966 and 1961, respondents were asked to state their age in completed years as of their last birthday before the census date. In 1961, published data for single years of age were graduated (or smoothed) within each five-year age group to counteract the tendency towards 'heaping' at certain specific ages. In 1966, this was not done, and the published tables represent the date as reported.

In 1991, 1986 and 1981, the day and month of birth were not retained for dissemination.

Note:

1. In 1976 and 1971, the question on date of birth was answered in groups of months: January to May or June to December.

Demography: Legal marital status

Part A – Short definition:

Refers to the marital status of the person under the law, excluding common-law status.

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to the marital status of the person under the law, excluding common-law status. Married spouses may be of opposite sex or of the same sex. The classification is as follows:

Single (never legally married)
A person who has never married or a person whose marriage has been annulled and who has not remarried.

Married (and not separated)
A person who is married and has neither separated nor divorced, and whose spouse is living.

Separated
A person who is married but who is no longer living with his/her spouse (for any reason other than illness, work or school) and who has not obtained a divorce.

Divorced
A person who has obtained a legal divorce and who has not remarried.

Widowed
A person who has lost his/her spouse through death and who has not remarried.


Reported for: Total population

Question no.: Direct variable: Question 4
Responses: Never legally married; Legally married (and not separated); Separated, but still legally married; Divorced; Widowed

Remarks: Since 1991, the addition of a question solely on common-law status has made it possible to separate the concept of common-law status from that of legal marital status and to provide accurate data on both these concepts.

In 2011, the category 'Never legally married' on the questionnaire was changed (previously 'Never legally married (single)'), but the concept did not change. Since 2006, the category 'Married' includes legally married same-sex spouses.

All persons under 15 years of age are considered to be single (never legally married).

Demography: Marital status

Part A – Short definition:

Refers to the marital status of the person, taking into account his/her common-law status.

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to the marital status of the person, taking into account his/her common-law status. Persons who are married or living common law may be of opposite sex or of the same sex.

The classification is as follows:

Married (and not separated)
A person who is married and has not separated or obtained a divorce, and whose spouse is living.

Common-law
A person who is living with another person as a couple but who is not legally married to that person.

Separated
A person who is married but who no longer lives with his/her spouse (for any reason other than illness, work or school) and who has not obtained a divorce. Persons living common law are not included in this category.

Divorced
A person who has obtained a legal divorce and who has not remarried. Persons living common law are not included in this category.

Widowed
A person who has lost his/her spouse through death and who has not remarried. Persons living common law are not included in this category.

Single (never legally married)
A person who has never married or a person whose marriage has been annulled and who has not remarried. Persons living common law are not included in this category.


Reported for: Total population

Question nos.: Derived variable: Questions 4 and 5
Responses:  Not applicable

Remarks:  Before 1981, data on marital status were collected using a single question. In the 1981 and 1986 censuses, people living common law could report their common-law status by using one of the response categories in the question on relationship to Person 1; they were nonetheless included in the category 'Married' for purposes of data on marital status. Since 1991, the addition of a question solely on common law has made it possible to separate the concept of common-law status from that of legal marital status and to provide accurate data on both these concepts. The data from both questions can be combined to derive the classification, 'Marital status.'

In 2011, the category 'Never legally married' on the questionnaire was changed (previously 'Never legally married (single)'), but the concept did not change. Since 2006, the category 'Married' includes legally married same-sex spouses. Since 2001, the category 'Common-law' includes same-sex common-law partners. In 1961 and 1966, separated persons were included with married persons.

All persons under 15 years of age are considered to be single (never legally married) and not living common law.

Demography: Sex

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to whether the person is male or female.


Reported for:  Total population

Question no.:  Direct variable: Question 2

Responses:  Male; Female

Institutional resident

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

Person who lives in an institutional collective dwelling, such as a hospital, a nursing home or a jail. This includes residents under care or custody and employee residents and family members living with them, if any.


Reported for:  Total population
Institutional collective dwellings are general and speciality hospitals, chronic care and long-term care hospitals, nursing homes, group homes or institutions for the physically handicapped and treatment centres, group homes for children and youth, group homes or institutions for people with psychiatric disorders or developmental disabilities, federal correctional institutions, provincial and territorial custodial facilities, young offenders' facilities, jails and police lock-up facilities, shelters for persons lacking a fixed address, shelters for abused women and their children and other shelters and lodging with assistance services.

In the 2001 and 2006 censuses, tabulations for the non-institutional population excluded all residents of institutional collective dwellings, both resident under care or custody and resident employees and family members living with them. In the 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 censuses, resident employees and their families were included in data for the non-institutional population. In 1981, the term 'Inmates' was used.

Note:
1. In 2011 and 2006, institutional residents exclude people living in seniors' residences.

Presence of children

Part A – Short definition:
Refers to the number of children in private households by age groups.

Part B – Detailed definition:
Refers to the number of children in private households by age groups. To be included, children must live in the same household as the family, without a married spouse, common-law partner or one or more of their children living in the same household. In a census family, they may be children by birth, marriage or adoption. In an economic family, foster children are also included.


Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over in private households

Question no.: Derived variable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: ‘Children’ refers to blood, step or adopted sons and daughters (regardless of age) who are living in the same dwelling as their parent(s), as well as to grandchildren in households where there are no parents present. Sons and daughters who are living with their married spouse or common-law partner, or with one or more of their own sons and/or daughters, are not considered to be members of the census family of their parent(s), even if they are living in the same dwelling. In addition, sons and daughters who do not live in the same dwelling as their parent(s) are not considered members of the census family of their parent(s).

As of the 2001 Census, several changes were made to the census family concepts. For additional information, see the Census family composition and Census family status definitions in the family universe.
Historically comparable data on presence of children and labour force activity dating back to the 1971 Census are available for females 15 years and over in private households. Similar data are available for males dating back to 1996.

**Note:**
1. In the 1981, 1986 and 1991 censuses, this variable was derived only for females 15 years and over in private households. Since 1996, this variable has been derived for both females and males 15 years and over in private households.

### Relationship to household reference person (Person 1)

**Part A – Short definition:**

Refers to the question about the relationship of household members to the first person reported on the questionnaire for the household, called Person 1.

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Refers to the question about the relationship of household members to the first person reported on the questionnaire for the household, called Person 1. A household member may be related to Person 1 through blood, marriage, common-law, adoption or a foster relationship or unrelated (e.g., lodger, room-mate or employee). This question is used to obtain information on families, as well as the family characteristics of individuals.


[Reported for: Total population]

[Question no.: Direct variable: Question 6]

[Responses: Person 1; Opposite-sex husband or wife; Opposite-sex common-law partner; Same-sex married spouse; Same-sex common-law partner; Son or daughter of Person 1 only; Son or daughter of both Persons 1 and 2; Son or daughter of Person 2 only; Son-in-law or daughter-in-law; Grandchild; Father or mother; Father-in-law or mother-in-law; Brother or sister; Foster child; Room-mate, lodger or boarder; Other – Specify]

[Remarks: Three different categories for son or daughter allow information on stepchildren to be captured. Prior to 2011, there was a single response category, 'Son or daughter of Person 1'. As of the 2011 Census, 'Foster child' is a response category. As of the 2011 Census, there are two response categories for married spouse of Person 1 to distinguish between opposite-sex and same-sex married spouses. In the 2006 Census, information on opposite-sex and same-sex married spouses was obtained from the responses to 'Husband or wife of Person 1' in conjunction with responses to sex (Question 2). In addition, 'same-sex married spouse' was included as an example for the write-in category of 'Other – Specify'. As of the 2001 Census, there are two response categories for common-law partner of Person 1, to distinguish between opposite-sex and same-sex common-law partners. In the 1996, 2001 and 2006 censuses, the write-in responses for the category 'Other – Specify' on the short questionnaire were not coded to the appropriate detailed relationship value, but were classified as 'other' relationships. Only write-in responses from the long]
questionnaire (20% sample) were fully coded. As a result, family characteristics are available only for the 20% sample for those years.

Regarding the order in which to list household members on the questionnaire, there is an instruction to 'begin the list with an adult followed, if applicable, by that person's spouse or common-law partner and by their children'. Previous wording of the instruction in the census has varied, but the meaning has stayed the same. One exception is that in 1971, Person 1, then called the 'head of household', was defined as 'the husband rather than the wife' in a married couple. In 1976, this was changed to 'either the husband or the wife'.

Note:
1. There are fewer response categories on the questionnaire for collective households.

Usual place of residence

Part A – Short definition:
In general, the usual place of residence is the dwelling in Canada in which a person lives most of the time.

Part B – Detailed definition:
In most cases, people have only one residence. This dwelling is therefore their usual place of residence (main residence).

However, there are a number of situations where the process is not elementary and special rules have been created in order to define an individual’s usual place of residence.

1. Persons with more than one residence

This category includes all persons who have more than one dwelling in Canada that could be considered by them as their usual place of residence. In this situation, the usual place of residence is the place where a person spends the major part of the year. If the time spent at each residence is equal or the person is not sure which one to choose, the residence where he or she stayed overnight between May 9 and 10, 2011 should be considered as his or her usual place of residence.

However, there are two exceptions to this general rule:

(a) Sons or daughters who live somewhere else while attending school, but return to live with their parents part of the year, should consider the residence they share with their parents as their usual place of residence, even if they spend most of the year elsewhere.

(b) Husbands, wives or common-law partners who live away from their families while working, but return to their families regularly (for example, on weekends), should consider the residence they share with their spouse or partner as their usual place of residence, even if they spend most of the year elsewhere.

2. Persons in institutions (such as a hospital, a nursing home, a prison or a correctional centre)

Persons with no other usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada, or persons who have been in one or more institutions for a continuous period of six months or longer, are to be considered usual residents of the institution.
3. Residents with no usual place of residence

Residents who do not have a usual place of residence should be enumerated in the dwelling where they stayed overnight between May 9 and 10, 2011.

4. Persons residing outside Canada

Canadian citizens and landed immigrants residing outside Canada on the reference day (particularly persons aboard Canadian government or merchant vessels, Canadian government employees (federal and provincial) and their family, and members of the Canadian Armed Forces and their family) who do not have a permanent place of residence within Canada occupied by one or more family members, were asked to provide on the Census questionnaire the address they use for election purposes or their last permanent address within Canada. This information is then used to determine a geographic location for defining their usual place of residence.

Reported for: Not applicable
Question no.: Not applicable
Responses: Not applicable
Remarks: The concept of usual place of residence is necessary to ensure that residents of Canada are counted once and only once. The use of this concept means that the Canadian census is a *de jure* census, as opposed to a *de facto* census. Thus, individuals are counted at their usual place of residence, regardless of where they are found on Census Day. The *de jure* method has been used since 1871.

Language: **First official language spoken**

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to a variable specified within the framework of the *Official Languages Act*.

Censuses: 2011 (100% population), 2006 (1/5 sample), 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample)
Reported for: Total population
Question nos.: Derived variable: Questions 7, 8 and 9
Responses: Not applicable
Remarks: This variable was derived within the framework of the application of the *Official Languages Act*.

This derivation method is described in the regulations concerning the use of official languages for the provision of public services. It takes into account, first the knowledge of the two official languages, second the mother tongue, and third, the home language.
People who can conduct a conversation in French only are assigned French as their first official language spoken. People who can carry on a conversation in English only are assigned English as their first official language spoken. The responses to questions on mother tongue and language spoken most often at home are subsequently used to establish the first official language spoken by people who speak both English and French, or who cannot speak either of the two official languages. The French category includes people who have French only or French and at least one non-official language as their mother tongue. People who have English only or English and at least one non-official language as their mother tongue are included in the English category. For cases that have not yet been classified, people are assigned to the French category when they speak French only or French and at least one non-official language as their language spoken most often at home. The procedure is the same for English. Thus, the population is classified into two principal categories: English or French. It is necessary to add two residual categories for people who cannot be classified in accordance with the information available: English and French and neither English nor French.

Please consult the following documents for more information: Official Languages (Communications with and Services to the Public) Regulations, registered on December 16, 1991, in accordance with section 85 of the Official Languages Act, R.S.C., c. 32 (4th Suppl.) and Population Estimates by First Official Language Spoken, 1991, Catalogue no. 94-320, Demography Division, Statistics Canada.

**Language: Home language**

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to the language spoken most often or on a regular basis at home by the individual on May 10, 2011.

Censuses: 2011 (100% population), 2006 (1/5 sample), 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Total population

Question no.: Direct variable: Question 8, part (a) and (b)

Responses: See Figures 23, 23A, 23B, 23C, 23D, 23E and 23F.

Remarks: This question was changed after the 1996 Census. Until that census, the question asked individuals for the language spoken most often at home, which now represents part (a) of the question that has been asked since 2001. Part (b) on other languages spoken on a regular basis at home has been added since 2001. This was done in order to reflect a more complete picture of the linguistic situation of Canadian households.

On the French version of all census forms, for all questions in the language module where there is a choice of response available, the order in which the choices appear has been modified since 1996 in order to give precedence to the category 'French.' The questions on knowledge of official languages and non-official languages, formerly asked on the long form census questionnaires, also reflect this change, in the actual wording of the questions.
For comparability purposes, Appendix D provides a list of languages released in 2001, 2006, and 2011.

**Comparison with 1996 Census data**

Some 2011 Census data on home language by type of response (for example, 'spoken regularly') cannot be compared with census data in 1996 and before, since the second part of the question on home language, asked for the first time in 2001, relates to any other languages spoken on a regular basis at home. The category 'Single responses' means that the language reported is the only one spoken most often at home while the category 'Multiple responses' indicates that at least two languages have been reported as spoken most often at home.

When comparing 2011 Census data on home language with data from 1996 or before, only the language spoken most often at home is to be used since, before the 2001 Census, there was no question asked regarding other languages spoken on a regular basis.

The categories 'Only' and 'Mostly' were derived to obtain the frequency of language spoken at home from the single responses reported in part (a) of the question on home language. The category 'Equally' was derived to obtain the frequency of language spoken at home from the multiple responses reported in part (a) of the question on home language. Finally, the category 'Regularly' was created from the responses reported in the second part of the question pertaining to home language, asked for the first time in 2001.

**Language: Home language – Part A**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Refers to the language spoken most often at home by the individual on May 10, 2011. Data on other languages spoken on a regular basis at home are also collected.

**Censuses:**

- 2011 (100% population), 2006 (1/5 sample), 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

**Reported for:**

Total population

**Question no.:**

Direct variable: Question 8, part (a)

**Responses:**

See Figures 23, 23A, 23B, 23C, 23D, 23E and 23F.

**Remarks:**

This question was changed after the 1996 Census. Until that census, the question asked individuals for the language spoken most often at home, which now represents part (a) of the question that has been asked since 2001. Part (b) on other languages spoken on a regular basis at home has been added since 2001. This was done in order to reflect a more complete picture of the linguistic situation of Canadian households.

On the French version of all census forms, for all questions in the language module where there is a choice of response available, the order in which the choices appear has been modified since 1996 in order to give precedence to the category 'French.' The questions on
knowledge of official languages and non-official languages, formerly on long form census questionnaires, also reflect this change, in the actual wording of the questions.

For comparability purposes, Appendix D provides a list of languages released in 2001, 2006 and 2011.

**Comparison with 1996 Census data**

Some 2011 Census data on home language by type of response (for example, 'spoken regularly') cannot be compared with census data in 1996 and before, since the second part of the question on home language, asked for the first time in 2001, relates to the other language(s) spoken on a regular basis at home. The category 'Single responses' means that the language reported is the only one spoken most often at home while the category 'Multiple responses' indicates that at least two languages have been reported as spoken most often at home.

When comparing 2011 Census data on home language with data from 1996 or before, only the language spoken most often at home is to be used since, before the 2001 Census, there was no question asked regarding other languages spoken on a regular basis.

The categories 'Only' and 'Mostly' were derived to obtain the frequency of language spoken at home from the single responses reported in part (a) of the question on home language. The category 'Equally' was derived to obtain the frequency of language spoken at home from the multiple responses reported in part (a) of the question on home language. Finally, the category 'Regularly' was created from the responses reported in the second part of the question pertaining to home language, asked for the first time in 2001.

**Language: Home language – Part B**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Refers to the other language(s) spoken on a regular basis at home by the individual on May 10, 2011. Data on language spoken most often at home were also collected.

**Censuses:** 2011 (100% population), 2006 (1/5 sample), 2001 (1/5 sample)

**Reported for:** Total population

**Question no.:** Direct variable: Question 8, part (b)

**Responses:** See Figures 23, 23A, 23B, 23C, 23D, 23E and 23F.

**Remarks:** This question was added after the 1996 Census. Until that census, the question asked individuals for the language spoken most often at home, which now represents part (a) of the question that has been asked since 2001. This part (part [b]) on languages spoken on a regular basis at home was added since 2001. This was done in order to reflect a more complete portrait of the linguistic situation of Canadian households.
In 2011, the following instructions for question 8, part (a) and part (b), were provided to respondents in the 2011 Census Guide:

On the French version of all census forms, for all questions in the language module where there is a choice of response available, the order in which the choices appear has been modified since 1996 in order to give precedence to the category ‘French.’ The questions on knowledge of official languages and non-official languages, formerly on long form census questionnaires, also reflect this change, in the actual wording of the questions.

For comparability purposes, Appendix D provides a list of languages released in 2001, 2006 and 2011.

**Comparison with 1996 Census data**

Some 2011 Census data on home language by type of response (for example, ‘spoken regularly’) cannot be compared with census data in 1996 and before, since the second part of the question on home language, asked for the first time in 2001, relates to the other language(s) spoken on a regular basis at home. The category ‘Single responses’ means that the language reported is the only one spoken most often at home while the category ‘Multiple responses’ indicates that at least two languages have been reported as spoken most often at home.

When comparing 2011 Census data on home language with data from 1996 or before, only the language spoken most often at home is to be used since, before the 2001 Census, there was no question asked regarding other languages spoken on a regular basis.

The categories ‘Only’ and ‘Mostly’ were derived to obtain the frequency of language spoken at home from the single responses reported in part (a) of the question on home language. The category ‘Equally’ was derived to obtain the frequency of language spoken at home from the multiple responses reported in part (a) of the question on home language. Finally, the category ‘Regularly’ was created from the responses reported in the second part of the question pertaining to home language, asked for the first time in 2001.

**Language: Knowledge of official languages**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Refers to the ability to conduct a conversation in English only, in French only, in both English and French, or in neither English nor French.

**Censuses:** 2011 (100% population), 2006 (1/5 sample), 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample).

**Reported for:** Total population

**Question no.:** Direct variable: Question 7

**Responses:** English only; French only; Both English and French; Neither English nor French

**Remarks:** The official language data are based on the respondent’s assessment of his or her ability to speak the two official languages.
This is the same question as in 2006, 2001, 1996 and 1991.

On the French version of all census forms, for all questions in the language module where there is a choice of response available, the order in which the choices appear was modified since 1996 in order to give precedence to the category 'French'. The questions on knowledge of official languages and non-official languages also reflect this change in the actual wording of the questions.

**Language: Mother tongue**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Refers to the first language learned at home in childhood and still understood by the individual on May 10, 2011.


**Reported for:** Total population

**Question nos.:** Direct variable: Question 9

**Responses:** See Figures 23, 23A, 23B, 23C, 23D, 23E and 23F.

**Remarks:** For the first time in 2011, the mother tongue question is not the only language question asked of the entire population. In 2011, as on previous long form census questionnaires since 1991, the question on mother tongue appears after the knowledge of official language and home language questions.

In the wording of the question on mother tongue, the expression 'at home' was added to specify the context in which the individual learned the language. Only the two official languages, English and French, appeared on the questionnaire. Other languages could be written in the space provided, as in 2006, 2001, 1996 and 1991. In previous censuses, the most frequently occurring non-official languages were listed on the questionnaire.

To facilitate respondents' task an instruction which appeared in the 1986 Census Guide was added to the questionnaire in 1991, where it remained in 1996, 2001, 2006, and 2011. The instruction read as follows: 'If this person no longer understands the first language learned, indicate the second language learned.'

On the French version of all census forms, for all questions in the language module where there was a choice of response available, the order in which the choices appeared was modified after 1996 in order to give precedence to the category 'French.' The questions on knowledge of official languages and non-official languages also reflected this change in the actual wording of the questions.

For comparability purposes, Appendix D provides a list of languages released in 2001, 2006, and 2011.
Figure 23  Mother Tongue and Home Language

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-official languages</th>
<th>Total population, mother tongue and home language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Aboriginal languages
- Algonquian languages
- Athapaskan languages
- Haida
- Inuit languages
- Iroquoian languages
- Kutenai
- Michif
- Salish languages
- Siouan languages
- Tlingit
- Tsimshian languages
- Wakashan languages
- Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.

Romance languages
- Italian
- Portuguese
- Romanian
- Spanish
- Catalán
- Romance languages, n.i.e.

Germanic languages
- Dutch
- Flemish
- Frisian
- German
- Yiddish
- Scandinavian languages
- Afrikaans
- Germanic languages, n.i.e.

Celtic languages
- Gaelic languages
- Welsh
- Celtic languages, n.i.e.

Slavic languages
- Belarusian (Byelorussian)
- Bosnian
- Bulgarian
- Croatian
- Czech
- Macedonian
- Polish
- Russian
- Serbian
- Serbo-Croatian
- Slovak
- Slovenian
- Ukrainian
- Slavic languages, n.i.e.

Baltic languages
- Latvian
- Lithuanian

Greek

Armenian

Albanian

Georgian

Finno-Ugric languages
- Estonian
- Finnish
- Hungarian

Turkic languages
- Azerbaijani
- Turkish
- Turkic languages, n.i.e.

Afro-Asiatic languages
- Berber languages (Kabyle)
- Cushitic languages
- Semitic languages
- Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.

Indo-Iranian languages
- Kannada
- Malayalam
- Tamil
- Telugu
- Dravidian languages, n.i.e.

Dravidian languages

Japanese

Korean

Sino-Tibetan Languages
- Chinese languages
- Tibetan languages
- Burmese
- Sino-Tibetan languages, n.i.e.

Tai languages
- Lao
- Thai

Austro-Asiatic languages
- Khmer (Cambodian)
- Vietnamese

Malayo-Polynesian languages
- Bisayan languages
- Ilocano
- Malay
- Pampango
- Tagalog (Pilipino, Filipino)
- Bikol
- Malagasy
- Fijian
- Pangasinan
- Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.

Niger-Congo Languages
- Akan (Twi)
- Bantu languages
- Edo
- Igbo
- Wolof
- Bamanankan
- Ewe
- Ga
- Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.

African languages, n.i.e.

Creoles

Non-verbal languages
- American Sign Language
- Quebec Sign Language
- Sign languages, n.i.e.

Other languages

1.For a detailed breakdown of Aboriginal, Germanic languages, Niger-Congo languages, Afro-Asiatic languages, Indo-Iranian language and Sino-Tibetan languages, see Figures 23A, 23B, 23C, 23D, 23E and 23F on the following page.
Figure 23A Aboriginal languages

Source: Statistics Canada, 2011 Census of Population
Figure 23B Germanic languages

Germanic languages

Dutch
Flemish
Frisian
German
Yiddish

Scandinavian languages

Danish
Icelandic
Norwegian
Swedish

Afrikaans

Germanic languages, n.i.e.

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere


Figure 23C Niger-Congo languages

Niger-Congo languages

Akan (Twi)

Bantu languages

Edo
Igbo
Wolof
Bamanankan
Ewe
Ga

Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.

Lingala
Rundi (Kurundi)
Rwanda (Kinyarwanda)
Shona
Swahili
Ganda

Bantu languages, n.i.e.

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere

Figure 23D Afro-Asiatic languages

![Diagram of Afro-Asiatic languages]

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population

Figure 23E Indo-Iranian languages

![Diagram of Indo-Iranian languages]

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere
n.o.s. = not otherwise specified

Figure 23F Sino-Tibetan languages

Sino-Tibetan languages

- Chinese languages
  - Cantonese
  - Chacchow (Teochow)
  - Fukien
  - Hakka
  - Mandarin
  - Shanghai Chinese
  - Chinese, n.o.s.

- Tibetan languages

- Burmese

- Sino-Tibetan languages, n.i.e.

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere
n.o.s. = not otherwise specified

Introduction to the family universe

Within the family universe, two definitions of families exist: census family and economic family (see Figures 17 and 18). The related variables provide characteristics of families and of individuals in private households.

Figure 17  2011 Census and economic family universes and subuniverses

Figure 18 Economic and census family membership and family status

1. Foster children are included.

Census family

Part A – Short definition:

Refers to a married couple (with or without children), a common-law couple (with or without children) or a lone parent family.

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to a married couple (with or without children of either and/or both spouses), a common-law couple (with or without children of either and/or both partners) or a lone parent of any marital status, with at least one child. A couple may be of opposite sex or same sex. A couple family with children may be further classified as either an intact family in which all children are the biological and/or adopted children of both married spouses or of both common-law partners or a stepfamily with at least one biological or adopted child of only one married spouse or common-law partner and whose birth or adoption preceded the current relationship. Stepfamilies, in turn may be classified as simple or complex. A simple stepfamily is a couple family in which all children are biological or adopted children of one, and only one, married spouse or common-law partner whose birth or adoption preceded the current relationship. A complex stepfamily is a couple family which contains at least one biological or adopted child whose birth or adoption preceded the current relationship. These families contain children from:

- each married spouse or common-law partner and no other children
- one married spouse or common-law partner and at least one other biological or adopted child of the couple
- each married spouse or common-law partner and at least one other biological or adopted child of the couple.


Reported for: Population in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada)

Question nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: ‘Children’ refer to blood, step or adopted sons and daughters (regardless of age or marital status) who are living in the same dwelling as their parent(s), as well as grandchildren in households where there are no parents present. Sons and daughters who are living with their married spouse or common-law partner, or with one or more of their own children, are not considered to be members of the census family of their parent(s), even if they are living in the same dwelling. In addition, the sons or daughters who do not live in the same dwelling as their parent(s) are not considered members of the census family of their parent(s). Sons or daughters who study or have a summer job elsewhere but return to live with their parent(s) during the year are considered members of the census family of their parent(s).

As of 2011, a child living with a couple family can be identified as a child in an intact family; the child of one parent in a simple stepfamily; the child of one parent in a complex stepfamily; or the child of both parents in a complex stepfamily.

As of 2006, a married couple may be of opposite or same sex.

The 2001 Census introduced several changes to the census family concept:
• Two persons living in a same-sex common-law relationship and their children residing in the same household, if any, are considered a census family.

• Children in a census family can have been previously married (as long as they are not currently living with a married spouse or common-law partner). Prior to the 2001 Census, they had to be never-married.

• A grandchild living in a three-generation household where the parent (middle generation) is never-married will, contrary to previous censuses, now be considered as a child in the census family of his or her parent, provided the grandchild is not living with his or her own married spouse, common-law partner, or child. Prior to the 2001 Census, the census family consisted of the two older generations.

• A grandchild present in the household of his or her grandparent(s), where a middle-generation parent is not present, will now be considered as a child in the census family of his or her grandparent, provided the grandchild is not living with his or her own married spouse, common-law partner, or child. Prior to the 2001 Census, such a grandchild would not be considered as the member of a census family.

As of 2011, all write-in responses for Question 6 (Relationship to Person 1) are captured on the census form, so that family characteristics can be available for 100% census data.

In the 1996, 2001 and 2006 censuses, the write-in responses for Question 6 (Relationship to Person 1) on the short questionnaire were not coded to the appropriate detailed relationship value, but were classified as ‘other’ relationships. Only write-in responses from the long questionnaire (20% sample) were fully coded. As a result, family characteristics are available only for the 20% sample for those years.

In censuses prior to 1991, the families of married couples and those of opposite-sex common-law couples together constituted husband-wife families and appeared as such in most census family tables.

The census family and its associated classifications and variables are derived according to responses to the questions on sex, date of birth, marital status, common-law status and relationship to Person 1. In addition, consideration is given to the order in which household members are listed on the questionnaire.

Figure 19 provides an overview of the census family variables.

**Notes:**

1. In censuses prior to 1976, published family statistics included families living in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada) and all collective households.

2. As of 2001, census families do not include Hutterite collective households, as they did prior to 2001.
Figure 19 Overview of the Census Family and Economic Family Variables

1. Foster children are included.

2. Economic family in which the economic family reference person lives with other relatives but does not have a married spouse, common-law partner or child.

Census family composition

Part A – Short definition:
Refers to the classification of census families according to the number and/or age groups of children at home.

Part B – Detailed definition:
Refers to the classification of census families (that is, married or common-law couples, with or without children, and lone parents with at least one child) by the number and/or age group of children living at home. A couple may be of opposite or same sex. A couple with children may be further classified as either an intact family or stepfamily, and stepfamilies may, in turn, be classified as simple or complex. Children in a census family include grandchildren living with their grandparent(s) but with no parents present.


Reported for: Census families in private households

Question nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: In 1971, the concept of 'children' included sons or daughters aged 24 years and younger, and never married. In 1976, the age restriction was removed, and the concept of 'children' was defined as sons or daughters of any age.

Since 2001, the concept of 'children' includes sons or daughters of any age, whether or not they have been married, provided they do not have a married spouse, common-law partner or children living in the household. Grandchildren living in the household with grandparent(s) and no parent(s) present are also considered children in the census family of their grandparent(s).

See Census family for more information on intact families and stepfamilies.

Note:
1. In 1971, published family statistics included families living in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada) and all collective households.

Census family household composition

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:
The term 'Census family household composition' is discontinued for the 2011 Census.
Census family status

Part A – Short definition:

Classification of persons according to whether or not they are members of a census family and the status they have in the census family (a census family is composed of a married couple or two persons living common-law, with or without children, or of a lone parent living with at least one child in the same dwelling). A person can be a married spouse, a common-law partner, a lone parent, a child or a person not in a census family.

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to the classification of the population according to whether or not the persons are members of a census family. (See Figure 18.)

Census family persons refer to household members who belong to a census family.

Census family persons can be further classified into one of the following four categories:

Married spouses – Two persons of opposite sex or of the same sex who are legally married to each other and living in the same dwelling.

Common-law partners – Two persons of opposite sex or of the same sex who are not legally married to each other, but live together as a couple in the same dwelling.

Lone parents – Mothers or fathers, with no married spouse or common-law partner present, living in a dwelling with one or more children.

Children – Blood, step or adopted sons and daughters (regardless of age or marital status) who are living in the same dwelling as their parent(s), as well as grandchildren in households where there are no parents present. Sons and daughters who are living with their married spouse or common-law partner, or with one or more of their own children, are not considered to be members of the census family of their parent(s), even if they are living in the same dwelling. In addition, those sons and daughters who do not live in the same dwelling as their parent(s) are not considered members of the census family of their parent(s).

Persons not in census families refer to household members who do not belong to a census family.


Reported for: Population in private households

Question nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Census family status is used when detail is required for persons who are part of a census family.

Common-law partners may be of any marital status other than 'Legally married (and not separated).'</n

The category of 'children' can be further distinguished as follows:

- Never-married sons and/or daughters in a census family.
- Ever-married sons and/or daughters in a census family, that is, who were previously married, were not included in census families according to the pre-2001 concept.
Family universe

- Grandchildren living in the same household as their grandparent(s), with no parents present; these grandchildren were not included in census families according to the pre-2001 concept.
- As of 2011, a child in a couple family can be classified as either a child in an intact family or a child in a stepfamily. A child in a stepfamily, in turn, can be classified as a child in a simple stepfamily or a child in a complex stepfamily (refer to Census family for definition of intact families, stepfamilies, and simple and complex stepfamilies).

Notes:

1. Between 1976 and 2001, unrelated wards, foster and guardianship children are classified as lodgers rather than as sons/daughters of Person 1 (as had been the previous census practice). As of the 2006 Census, persons reported as foster children are classified as other relatives of Person 1, and are therefore in the same economic family as Person 1, but not the same census family.

2. The published data for census family status for 1971, 1976, 1981 and 1986 are comparable, although census family status as defined in the Dictionary of the 1971 Census Terms (Catalogue no. 12-540) corresponds to the definition of Census family structure used from the 1976 to 2006 censuses.

In 1971, published family statistics included families living in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada) and all collective households.

Census family structure

Part A – Short definition:

Refers to the classification of census families into married couples (with or without children of either and/or both spouses), common-law couples (with or without children of either and/or both partners), and lone-parent families by sex of parent.

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to the classification of census families into married couples (with or without children of either and/or both spouses), common-law couples (with or without children of either and/or both partners), and lone-parent families by sex of parent. A couple may be of opposite or same sex. A couple with children may be further classified as either an intact family or stepfamily, and stepfamilies may, in turn, be classified as simple or complex. Children in a census family include grandchildren living with their grandparent(s) but with no parents present.


Reported for: Census families in private households

Question nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: As of 2001, the term 'couple families' will be used when referring inclusively to families of married couples and families of common-law couples. In censuses prior to 1991, the term 'husband-wife families' used in census products covered both the families of married couples and those of opposite-sex common-law couples. Data on opposite-sex common-law couples have been available only since 1981.
As of 2001, data on same-sex common-law couples are available.

As of 2006, data on same-sex married couples are available.

As of 2011, data on intact families and stepfamilies are available.

See Census family for more information on stepfamilies.

Census family type

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable.

Part B – Detailed definition:

The term ‘Census family type’ is discontinued for the 2011 Census.

Economic family

Part A – Short definition:

Refers to a group of two or more persons who live in the same dwelling and are related to each other by blood, marriage, common-law, adoption or a foster relationship.

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to a group of two or more persons who live in the same dwelling and are related to each other by blood, marriage, common-law, adoption or a foster relationship. A couple may be of opposite or same sex.


Reported for: Population in private households

Question nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: The economic family concept requires only that family members be related by blood, marriage, common-law, adoption or a foster relationship. By contrast, the census family concept requires that family members be a male or female married spouse, a male or female common-law partner, a male or female lone parent, or a child with a parent present. The concept of economic family may refer to a larger group of persons than does the census family concept. For example, a widowed mother living with her married son and daughter-in-law would be considered as a person not in a census family. That same person would, however, be counted as a member of an economic family along with her son and daughter-in-law. Two or more related census families living together also constitute one economic family as, for example, a husband and his wife living with their married son and daughter-in-law. Two or more adult brothers or sisters living together, apart from their parents, form an economic family, but not a census family. All census family persons are economic family persons.

The economic family and its associated classifications and variables are derived according to the responses to the questions on sex, date of birth, marital status, common-law status, and
relationship to Person 1. In addition, consideration is given to the order in which household members are listed on the questionnaire.

Figure 19 provides an overview of the economic family variables.

Notes:

1. In 1971, published family statistics included families living in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada) and all collective households.

2. As of 2001, economic families do not include Hutterite collective households. Prior to 2001, economic families were defined in Hutterite collective households.

3. As of 2001, common-law partners may be of opposite or same sex. As of 2006, married spouses may be of opposite or same sex.

4. As of 2006, foster children are considered economic family members.

Economic family status

Part A – Short definition:

Refers to the classification of the population according to whether or not the persons are members of an economic family.

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to the classification of the population according to whether or not the persons are members of an economic family. (See Figure 17.)

Economic family persons refer to two or more household members who are related to each other by blood, marriage, common-law, adoption or a foster relationship, and thereby constitute an economic family.

Economic family persons can be further classified into one of the following two categories:

a) Economic family reference person

In each economic family, one person is designated as the reference person. In couple families, either opposite-sex or same-sex, the first person in the couple listed on the questionnaire is the economic family reference person. In lone-parent families, the male or female lone parent is the reference person. In all other economic families, the reference person is either a man or a woman not in a census family.

b) Economic family members

Persons in the economic family other than the economic family reference person are classified as the married spouse or the common-law partner of the reference person, children of the reference person (including grandchildren), or other economic family members (including foster children). Children of the reference person may be of any age or marital status.

Persons not in economic families refer to household members who do not belong to an economic family, including persons living alone.


Reported for: Population in private households
Question nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Prior to 2011, the male married spouse or common-law partner was designated as the economic family reference person in opposite-sex couples, in order to produce historically comparable low-income statistics.

In 2006, grandchildren of the reference person, in the absence of the mother or father in the household, were considered as children of the reference person. In 2011, all grandchildren of the reference person are considered as children. Foster children are considered as other economic family members as of 2006.

In 1971, published family statistics included families living in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada) and all collective households.

Economic family structure

Part A – Short definition:

Refers to the classification of economic families as couple families, lone-parent families or other economic families.

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to the classification of economic families as couple families, lone-parent families or other economic families.

Couple families – Those in which a member of either a married or common-law couple is the economic family reference person.

Lone-parent families – Those in which either a male or female lone parent is the economic family reference person.

Other economic families – Those in which the economic family reference person has other relatives but does not have a married spouse or common-law partner or a child in their census family.


Reported for: Economic families in private households

Question nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: See Economic family status for more information on economic family reference persons.

See also 'Remarks' for Economic family.

Note:

1. In the 1986 and 1981 Censuses, economic families of married and common-law (opposite-sex) couples were both considered husband-wife economic families.
Economic family type

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:
The term 'Economic family type' is discontinued for the 2011 Census.

Household living arrangements

Part A – Short definition:
Refers to the classification of persons as members of a family household or of a non-family household, and whether they are family persons or persons not in a census family.

Part B – Detailed definition:
Refers to the classification of persons as members of a family household or of a non-family household, that is, whether or not they are living in a household that contains at least one census family, and whether they are members of a census family or not in a census family. Persons not in census families are further classified as living with relatives, living with non-relatives (only) or living alone.

Reported for: Population in private households
Question nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.
Responses: Not applicable
Remarks: This variable provides data on household living arrangements at the population level.

This variable should be used when the distinction between persons living in family households or non-family households is important, and/or when further detail is required for persons who are not part of a census family. For more information, see Household type in the Household universe section and Census family status.
Introduction to the household universe

The household universe is composed of subuniverses and variables (see Figures 20 and 21) which pertain to the person or the group of persons (other than foreign residents) who occupy a dwelling and do not have a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada. Household variables are distinct from dwelling variables, in that the latter ones pertain to dwelling characteristics, not to persons occupying dwellings.

Figure 20 Household universe

Refer to Figure 21 for a graphic representation of the household subuniverses for which variables are available.


Figure 21 Household universe and subuniverses

Household

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to a person or a group of persons (other than foreign residents) who occupy the same dwelling and do not have a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada. It may consist of a family group (census family) with or without other persons, of two or more families sharing a dwelling, of a group of unrelated persons, or of one person living alone. Household members who are temporarily absent on May 10, 2011 (e.g., temporarily residing elsewhere) are considered as part of their usual household. Every person is a member of one and only one household. Unless otherwise specified, all data in household reports are for private households only.

Households are classified into three groups: **private households, collective households** and **households outside Canada**.


**Reported for:** Not applicable

**Question no.:** Not applicable

**Responses:** Not applicable

**Remarks:** See the definition [Household outside Canada](#).

Household, collective

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to a person or a group of persons who occupy a collective dwelling and do not have a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada. Only data for collective households with usual residents are shown.


**Reported for:** Collective households

**Question no.:** Not applicable

**Responses:** Not applicable

**Remarks:** See the definition [Collective dwelling](#) in the Dwelling universe section.
Household outside Canada

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:
Refers to a person or a group of persons residing together outside Canada on government, military or diplomatic postings.


Reported for: Households outside Canada

Question no.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: In 1971, the term 'households abroad' was used. Prior to the 1971 Census, these households were included in the count of private households, and housing data were imputed to them. In 1971, they were included in the count of private households to which housing data were not imputed. Since 1976, both households outside Canada and their dwellings have been excluded from the counts of private households and occupied private dwellings.

Household, private

Part A – Short definition:
Person or group of persons occupying the same dwelling.

Part B – Detailed definition:
Refers to a person or a group of persons (other than foreign residents) who occupy a private dwelling and do not have a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada.


Reported for: Private households

Question no.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: See the definition Household outside Canada.

Household size

Part A – Short definition:
Number of persons occupying a private dwelling.

Part B – Detailed definition:
Refers to the number of usual residents in a private household.

Reported for: Private households
Question no.: Not applicable
Responses: Not applicable
Remarks: Collective households and households outside Canada were not taken into account in the calculations used to establish household size.

Household type

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable.

Part B – Detailed definition:
Refers to the basic division of private households into family and non-family households. Family household refers to a household that contains at least one census family, that is, a married couple with or without children, or a couple living common-law with or without children, or a lone parent living with one or more children (lone-parent family). One-family household refers to a single census family (with or without other persons) that occupies a private dwelling. Multiple-family household refers to a household in which two or more census families (with or without additional persons) occupy the same private dwelling. Family households may also be divided based on the presence of persons not in a census family.

Non-family household refers to either one person living alone in a private dwelling or to a group of two or more people who share a private dwelling, but who do not constitute a census family.

Reported for: Private households
Question nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6
Responses: Not applicable
Remarks: In the 2001 Census products, one of the most detailed legends of the variable is as follows:

All households
  Family households
    One-family only households
    Couple family households
      Without children
      With children
    Lone-parent family households
  Other family households
    One-family households with persons not in a census family
    Couple family households
      Without children
      With children
    Lone-parent family households
    Two-or-more-family households
  Non-family households
    One person only
    Two or more persons
Introduction to the dwelling universe

The dwelling universe is composed of subuniverses and variables (see Figure 22) which pertain to characteristics of dwellings in Canada. Dwellings are distinct from households. Dwelling characteristics refer to the physical attributes of a set of living quarters, whereas household characteristics pertain to the person or the group of persons (other than foreign residents) who occupy a dwelling and do not have a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada.

Figure 22  Dwelling universe

Collective dwelling

**Part A – Short definition:**

Dwelling used for commercial, institutional or communal purposes, such as a hotel, a hospital or a work camp.

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Refers to a dwelling of a commercial, institutional or communal nature. It may be identified by a sign on the premises or by an enumerator speaking with the person in charge, a resident, a neighbour, etc. Included are lodging or rooming houses, hotels, motels, tourist homes, nursing homes, hospitals, staff residences, communal quarters (military bases), work camps, jails, group homes, and so on. Collective dwellings may be occupied by usual residents or solely by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons.


**Reported for:** See Figure 22 for an illustration of the 2011 dwelling universe.

**Question no.:** Not applicable

**Responses:** Collective dwelling types

**General and specialty hospitals**

An institution providing medical or surgical diagnosis and short-term treatment to the ill or injured. Included are general hospitals, children's hospitals, maternity hospitals, remote hospitals, etc.

**Chronic care and long-term care hospitals**

Establishments that provide continuous medical, nursing and professional health care supervision for long-term patients who are dependent in all activities of daily living and are unable to perform most or all personal care tasks.

Included are rehabilitation hospitals. These are hospitals which provide continuing treatment of patients whose condition is expected to improve through the provision of rehabilitative services.

Nursing homes are a long-term care facility that are classified as a separate category.

**Nursing homes**

Nursing homes are long-term care facilities, which provide a range of health care services going from periodic assistance up to regular nursing care, for elderly residents.

These facilities provide professional health monitoring and skilled nursing care 24/7.

Residents are not independent in most activities of daily living.

**Residences for senior citizens**

Residences for senior citizens that provide support services (such as meals, housekeeping, medication supervision, assistance in bathing) and supervision for elderly residents who are independent in most activities of daily living.
Group homes or institutions for the physically handicapped and treatment centres

Group homes or institutions providing care and treatment to the physically handicapped. Treatment centres provide care, treatment or assistance services for persons with an addiction. Generally, lower level of health care is provided than in hospitals or nursing homes.

Group homes for children and youth

Establishments that provide accommodation for children under guardianship of the court or children needing shelter or assistance services.

Group homes or institutions for people with psychiatric disorders or developmental disabilities

Group homes or institutions providing diagnosis or treatment to persons with psychiatric disorders or developmental disabilities.

Federal correctional institutions

Correctional institutions where inmates (mostly adults) are serving a sentence to custody of 2 years or more. These may be run either by the federal government or a private company.

Provincial and territorial custodial facilities

Correctional facilities or detention centres where inmates (mostly adults) are serving a sentence to custody of less than 2 years or who are being detained to await court proceedings, judgement or sentence. These may be run either by the provincial/territorial government or a private company.

Young offenders’ facilities

Facilities to which young offenders are admitted into custody. The facility may be an open or a secure custody facility. These minors are awaiting trial, are under court order or have been convicted of an offence. A young offender is a person who is 12 years of age and older, but less than 18 years of age, at the time of committing an offence.

Jails and police lock-up facilities

Facilities where persons are detained by police for a short period of time for any number of reasons, including awaiting court appearance, transfer to another facility or release. A lock-up facility is generally operated by a police force in a police station under the authority of a municipal, regional, provincial or federal authority. Persons may or may not have been charged with an offence. Detainees may be adults or young offenders.

Shelters for persons lacking a fixed address

Establishments for persons lacking a fixed address such as homeless shelters or shelters for street youth.

Shelters for abused women and their children

Establishments for women and their children who need shelter or assistance.

Other shelters and lodging with assistance

Establishments for residents who need shelter or assistance. Included are transition homes and halfway houses for ex-inmates or persons on conditional release.

Lodging and rooming houses

Commercial establishments (which may originally have been a private dwellings) having
furnished rooms for rent. Residents receive no type of care. They generally have access to common facilities, such as the kitchen and/or the bathroom.

**Hotels, motels and tourist establishments**
Commercial establishments that serve as temporary accommodation for business travellers and persons on pleasure trips. Also included are bed and breakfasts.

**Campgrounds and parks**
Buildings or other facilities providing temporary accommodation for persons on pleasure trips, or accommodation for transients or persons with no fixed address.

**School residences and training centre residences**
One or more buildings that usually accommodate students attending an educational institution or training centre, such as boarding schools, colleges and universities. These buildings may be located on or off the grounds of the institution and may accommodate non-students.

**Work camps**
Accommodation provided to employees of an industry, such as mining, logging or hydro construction, and generally located in a remote area. A work camp usually consists of bunkhouses, tents, trailers, etc.

**Other establishments with temporary accommodation services**
Establishments, such as YMCA/YWCA, hostels, and Ronald McDonald Homes, that do not belong to any of the above categories and provide temporary accommodation to persons with or without a fixed address. These establishments may charge for accommodation.

**Religious establishments**
Establishments, such as a convent or a seminary, which provide accommodation to members of a religious group.

**Military bases**
Barracks and other buildings on a military base in Canada belonging to the Canadian Forces.

**Commercial vessels (1,000 or more tonnes)**
Commercial vessels 1,000 or more tons gross tonnage under Canadian registry in port on May 10, 2011.

**Commercial vessels (under 1,000 tonnes)**
Commercial vessels less than 1,000 tons gross tonnage under Canadian registry in port on May 10, 2011.

**Government vessels**
Canadian Forces and Coast Guard vessels. Other government vessels, e.g., research and exploration vessels.

**Hutterite colonies**
A group of people of the Hutterite religion who live in dwellings that belong to the community and use their land for agricultural purposes.

For census purposes, a Hutterite colony is classified as a single collective dwelling, and the person in charge (the ‘boss’) is considered as its representative.
Other collective dwellings

A dwelling that meets the criteria of the collective dwelling definition, but does not fall into any specified type. Included are racetracks, outfitter camps, carnival and circus camps, non-religious communes.

Remarks: Only data for collective dwellings occupied by usual residents are published and limited information is available. The categories published for collective dwelling depend on the data quality.

Note:
1. The population of Canadian commercial and government vessels is assigned to special collective enumeration areas in port areas. The overall number of such enumeration areas is one per port.

Dwelling

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:
Refers to a set of living quarters in which a person or a group of persons resides or could reside.


Reported for: See Figure 22 for an illustration of the 2011 Dwelling universe.

Question no.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Not applicable

Dwelling, marginal, occupied by usual residents

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:
An occupied private dwelling which, because it was not built, maintained or converted for year-round use, does not meet the two conditions for year-round occupancy (a source of heat or power and shelter from the elements). To be included, the marginal dwelling must be permanently occupied by a person or a group of persons who have no other usual place of residence. Examples of occupied marginal dwellings are non-winterized cottages or cabins and unconverted barns or garages.
Dwelling universe


Reported for: See Figure 22 for an illustration of the 2011 dwelling universe.

Question no.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Not applicable

Notes:

1. In 2011, whether a dwelling lacked heat and/or shelter was evaluated by the enumerator for only a portion of the dwellings. In areas where questionnaires were mailed to respondents and no enumerator visited the dwelling, the marginal dwelling status was not collected.


Dwelling, private

Part A – Short definition:

A separate set of living quarters designed for or converted for human habitation in which a person or group of persons reside or could reside. In addition, a private dwelling must have a source of heat or power and must be an enclosed space that provides shelter from the elements, as evidenced by complete and enclosed walls and roof, and by doors and windows that provide protection from wind, rain and snow.

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to a separate set of living quarters with a private entrance either from outside or from a common hall, lobby, vestibule or stairway inside the building. The entrance to the dwelling must be one that can be used without passing through the living quarters of someone else. The dwelling must meet the two conditions necessary for year-round occupancy:

1. a source of heat or power (as evidenced by chimneys, power lines, oil or gas pipes or meters, generators, woodpiles, electric lights, heating pumps, solar heating panels, etc.)

2. an enclosed space that provides shelter from the elements (as evidenced by complete and enclosed walls and roof, and by doors and windows that provide protection from wind, rain and snow).

Dwellings that do not meet the conditions necessary for year-round occupancy are marginal dwellings. Private dwellings are classified into regular private dwellings and occupied marginal dwellings. Regular private dwellings are further classified into three major groups: occupied dwellings (occupied by usual residents), dwellings occupied by foreign and/or temporary residents and unoccupied dwellings. Marginal dwellings are classified as occupied by usual residents or by foreign and/or temporary residents. Marginal dwellings that were unoccupied on May 10, 2011, are not counted in the housing stock.


Reported for: See Figure 22 for an illustration of the 2011 Dwelling universe.

Question no.: Not applicable
Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Notes:

1. The classification of private dwellings into regular private dwellings and seasonal/marginal dwellings appears in the 1981 Census only. For the 2001, 1996, 1991 and 1986 censuses, the 'seasonal/marginal' variable was replaced by the variables 'Dwelling, marginal' and 'Dwelling under construction' (including conversion and extensive renovation).


**Dwelling, private, occupied by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Refers to a private dwelling occupied solely by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons on May 10, 2011. A temporarily present person of a dwelling is a person who resides there on May 10, 2011, but has a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada. A foreign resident is a person whose usual place of residence is outside Canada. These dwellings are classified into regular dwellings and occupied marginal dwellings.

Prior to 2011, 'Dwelling, private, occupied solely by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons' was referred to as 'Dwelling, private, occupied by foreign and/or temporary residents' in the Census Dictionary.


**Reported for:** See Figure 22 for an illustration of the 2011 Dwelling universe.

**Question no.:** Not applicable

**Responses:** Not applicable

**Remarks:** Note:

1. In 1976, private dwellings occupied by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons were not classified into regular dwellings and seasonal/marginal dwellings.

**Dwelling, private, occupied by usual residents**

**Part A – Short definition:**

A separate set of living quarters which has a private entrance either directly from outside or from a common hall, lobby, vestibule or stairway leading to the outside, and in which a person or a group of persons live permanently.
Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to a private dwelling in which a person or a group of persons is permanently residing. Also included are private dwellings whose usual residents are temporarily absent on May 10, 2011. Unless otherwise specified, all data in housing products are for occupied private dwellings, rather than for unoccupied private dwellings or dwellings occupied solely by foreign and/or temporary residents.


Reported for: See Figure 22 for an illustration of the 2011 Dwelling universe.

Question no.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable


Dwelling, regular

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

Refers to a private dwelling which was built or converted and meets the two conditions for year-round occupancy: a source of heat or power and shelter from the elements. These dwellings are classified into dwellings occupied by usual residents, dwellings occupied solely by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons and unoccupied dwellings.


Reported for: See Figure 22 for an illustration of the 2006 Dwelling universe.

Question no.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Note:

1. In 2011, whether a dwelling lacked heat and/or shelter was evaluated by the enumerator for only a portion of the dwellings. In areas where questionnaires were mailed to respondents and no enumerator visited the dwelling, the marginal dwelling status was not collected.
Dwelling, unoccupied private

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:
Refers to a private dwelling which meets the two conditions necessary for year-round occupancy (a source of heat or power and shelter from the elements), but in which no individual is residing on May 10, 2011.


Reported for: See Figure 22 for an illustration of the 2011 Dwelling universe.

Question no.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Marginal dwellings that were unoccupied on May 10, 2011 are not included in the housing stock.

Note:
1. In 1971, the term ‘vacant dwelling’ was used. This referred to a dwelling, not a seasonal or vacation home, which was suitable and available for immediate occupancy, but which was not inhabited on Census Day. Newly constructed dwellings, completed and ready for occupancy, but as yet unoccupied on May 10, 2011, were counted as vacant. This did not refer, however, to dwellings whose occupants were temporarily away.

Structural type of dwelling

Part A – Short definition:
Characteristics that define a dwelling’s structure, for example, the characteristics of a single-detached house, a semi-detached house, a row house, or an apartment or flat in a duplex.

Part B – Detailed definition:
Refers to the structural characteristics and/or dwelling configuration, that is, whether the dwelling is a single-detached house, an apartment in a high-rise building, a row house, a mobile home, etc.

Censuses: 2011\(^1\), 2006\(^1\), 2001\(^1\), 1996 (1/5 sample)\(^1\), 1991\(^1\), 1986\(^1\), 1981\(^1\), 1976\(^1\), 1971\(^1\), 1966\(^1\), 1961 (1/5 sample)\(^1\)

Reported for: Occupied private dwellings

Question no.: Not applicable

Responses: Single-detached house – A single dwelling not attached to any other dwelling or structure (except its own garage or shed). A single-detached house has open space on all sides, and has no dwellings either above it or below it. A mobile home fixed permanently to a foundation is also classified as a single-detached house.
Semi-detached house – One of two dwellings attached side by side (or back to back) to each other, but not attached to any other dwelling or structure (except its own garage or shed). A semi-detached dwelling has no dwellings either above it or below it, and the two units together have open space on all sides.

Row house – One of three or more dwellings joined side by side (or occasionally side to back), such as a townhouse or garden home, but not having any other dwellings either above or below. Townhouses attached to a high-rise building are also classified as row houses.

Apartment or flat in a duplex – One of two dwellings, located one above the other, may or may not be attached to other dwellings or buildings.

Apartment in a building that has five or more storeys – A dwelling unit in a high-rise apartment building which has five or more storeys.

Apartment in a building that has fewer than five storeys – A dwelling unit attached to other dwelling units, commercial units, or other non-residential space in a building that has fewer than five storeys.

Other single-attached house – A single dwelling that is attached to another building and that does not fall into any of the other categories, such as a single dwelling attached to a non-residential structure (e.g., a store or a church) or occasionally to another residential structure (e.g., an apartment building).

Mobile home – A single dwelling, designed and constructed to be transported on its own chassis and capable of being moved to a new location on short notice. It may be placed temporarily on a foundation pad and may be covered by a skirt.

Other movable dwelling – A single dwelling, other than a mobile home, used as a place of residence, but capable of being moved on short notice, such as a tent, recreational vehicle, travel trailer, houseboat or floating home.

Remarks: A linked home (a single house which is not attached to any other dwelling above ground) is classified as a 'single-detached house'.

Note:

1. Starting in 2006, 'apartment or flat in a duplex' replaces 'apartment or flat in a detached duplex' and includes duplexes attached to other dwellings or buildings. This is a change from the 2001 Census where duplexes attached to other dwellings or buildings were classified as an 'apartment in a building that has fewer than five storeys'.

In 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991 and 1986, the type of dwelling was coded by census representatives in the field. The coverage was: occupied private dwellings, unoccupied private dwellings, and dwellings occupied solely by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons. In 2011, the type of dwelling was coded for only a portion of the dwellings. In areas where questionnaires were mailed to respondents and no enumerator or canvasser visited the dwelling, the structural type of dwelling reflects the classification from 2006.

In 1971 and 1976, the type of dwelling was reported for occupied private dwellings and vacant (unoccupied) dwellings.

In 1996, 1991 and 1986, the term 'single-detached house' replaced 'single-detached' and 'single house', as used in previous censuses.

In 1996, 1991 and 1986, the term 'semi-detached house' replaced 'semi-detached or double house'.
In 1996, 1991 and 1986, the category 'other single-attached house' was introduced to cover types similar to the previous category 'house attached to a non-residential building' and to account as well for single houses attached to multi-unit or multi-purpose buildings.

In 1996, 1991 and 1986, the type earlier known as a 'duplex' was renamed an 'apartment or flat in a detached duplex' in order to be consistent with the definition.

In 1981, the category 'apartment or multiple dwelling' was expanded to two categories, 'apartment in a building that has five or more storeys' and 'apartment in a building that has fewer than five storeys'. In 1971, 1966 and 1961, the term 'apartment and flats' was used with the subcategories 'duplex' and 'other'.

Introduction to the geography universe

The geography universe defines terms related to geographical concepts, infrastructure, products and services. The following summary denotes changes made to the geographic program for the 2011 Census. For further details, refer to the individual definitions of terms.

Geographic areas

Census data are disseminated for a number of standard geographic areas. These areas are either administrative or statistical. Administrative areas are defined, with a few exceptions, by federal, provincial and territorial statutes. Statistical areas are defined by Statistics Canada as part of the spatial frame for disseminating census data. Figure 1 shows the hierarchy of all standard geographic units for dissemination and Table 1 shows the distribution of geographic units by province and territory.

Updates for 2011

- Improved coverage and quality of Statistics Canada geographic infrastructure

  The National Geographic Database (NGD) is a joint Statistics Canada/Elections Canada initiative to develop and maintain a national road network file which serves the needs of both organizations. Since 2001, the focus of the NGD has been on improving the quality and currency of its road network coverage using all provincially-sourced data. However, the following provincially/locally-sourced data have been used for geometric realignment: Digital Road Atlas (DRA) in British Columbia and Ontario Road Network (ORN) in six census divisions in Ontario (Halton, Hamilton, Ottawa, Peel, Toronto and Waterloo). Yukon, Northwest Territories and Nunavut now contain territory-sourced data. The result of this effort is a significant expansion of road names, civic address ranges and improved geometric accuracy.

  The NGD also contains separate reference layers comprising physical and cultural features such as water features, railway lines and power transmission lines.

  These improvements and expansions have been incorporated into Geography Division’s Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI). The result is that users of 2011 Census geography products such as road network files, boundary files and reference maps can geographically reference census data more accurately than before.

- Standard geographic areas

  For 2011, the term ‘population centre’ (POPCTR) replaces the term ‘urban area’ (UA). A population centre is defined as an area with a population of at least 1,000 and a density of 400 or more persons per square kilometre. All areas outside population centres continue to be defined as rural areas.

  Population centres are divided into three groups based on the size of their population to reflect the existence of an urban-rural continuum:

  - small population centres, with a population of between 1,000 and 29,999
  - medium population centres, with a population of between 30,000 and 99,999
  - large urban population centres, with a population of 100,000 and over.

  Users of the former urban area concept are able to continue with their longitudinal analysis using population centres.

  The terms ‘core,’ ‘fringe’ and ‘rural area’ replace the terms ‘urban core,’ ‘urban fringe’ and ‘rural fringe’ for the 2011 Census. Likewise, the term ‘secondary core’ replaces the term ‘secondary urban core.’ These terms distinguish between population centres (POPCTRs) and rural areas within a census metropolitan area (CMA) or a census agglomeration (CA).
The 2011 delineation criteria for inclusion in the designated place (DPL) program have changed. The two 2006 delineation criteria which remain are the requirements that the area must be 10 square kilometres or less and that it not overlap the area of a POPCTR.

New for 2011 is the removal of the requirement for a DPL to have a minimum population of 100 and a maximum population of 1,000. As well, there is no longer a requirement for a minimum population density of 150 persons per square kilometre. If, however, the population of the DPL exceeds 1,000 and the population density is at least 400 persons per square kilometre, then the DPL continues to be eligible to become a POPCTR. Population centres that are retired for 2011 due to population decline will still be assessed to determine if they are eligible to be DPLs. Finally, DPLs are no longer required to respect census subdivision (CSD) boundaries.

- Adjustment of population counts

Statistics Canada is committed to protect the privacy of all Canadians and the confidentiality of the data they provide to us. As part of this commitment, some population counts of geographic areas are adjusted in order to ensure confidentiality.

Counts of the total population are rounded to a base of 5 for any dissemination block having a population of less than 15. Population counts for all standard geographic areas above the dissemination block level are derived by summing the adjusted dissemination block counts. The adjustment of dissemination block counts is controlled to ensure that the population counts for dissemination areas will always be within 5 of the actual values. The adjustment has no impact on the population counts of census divisions and large census subdivisions. Population counts of federal electoral districts will be within 5 of the actual values. Dwelling counts are unadjusted.
Figure 1  Hierarchy of standard geographic units for dissemination, 2011 Census

1. A best fit linkage is created between the previous census CSDs and the current census dissemination blocks to facilitate historical data retrieval.

### Table 1 Geographic units by province and territory, 2011 Census

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Federal electoral district (2003 Representation Order)</td>
<td>308</td>
<td>308</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic region</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census agricultural region</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census division</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census consolidated subdivision</td>
<td>2,341</td>
<td>2,338</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>1,009</td>
<td>316</td>
<td>126</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census subdivision</td>
<td>5,418</td>
<td>5,253</td>
<td>376</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>273</td>
<td>1,285</td>
<td>574</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>952</td>
<td>435</td>
<td>743</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissolutions (Jan 2, 2006 to Jan 1, 2011)</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorporations (Jan 2, 2006 to Jan 1, 2011)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Designated place</td>
<td>1,289</td>
<td>1,507</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>167</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>251</td>
<td>319</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census metropolitan area</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census agglomeration</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with census tracts</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without census tracts</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census tract</td>
<td>5,076</td>
<td>5,452</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>1,371</td>
<td>2,273</td>
<td>173</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>573</td>
<td>711</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small population centre (1,000 to 29,999)</td>
<td>871</td>
<td>877</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>224</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium population centre (30,000 to 99,999)</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large urban population centre (100,000 or more)</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place name</td>
<td>21,471</td>
<td>35,039</td>
<td>4,035</td>
<td>703</td>
<td>3,136</td>
<td>2,579</td>
<td>5,356</td>
<td>8,001</td>
<td>1,839</td>
<td>2,687</td>
<td>3,117</td>
<td>3,928</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>433</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissemination area</td>
<td>54,253</td>
<td>56,204</td>
<td>1,077</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>6,145</td>
<td>1,454</td>
<td>13,522</td>
<td>15,564</td>
<td>2,175</td>
<td>2,457</td>
<td>5,711</td>
<td>7,582</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissemination block</td>
<td>478,937</td>
<td>493,348</td>
<td>8,732</td>
<td>3,573</td>
<td>18,842</td>
<td>15,415</td>
<td>104,856</td>
<td>182,277</td>
<td>30,471</td>
<td>15,100</td>
<td>36,332</td>
<td>55,529</td>
<td>1,269</td>
<td>1,462</td>
<td>788</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block-face</td>
<td>3,209,041</td>
<td>3,949,480</td>
<td>81,063</td>
<td>12,050</td>
<td>75,494</td>
<td>135,411</td>
<td>842,392</td>
<td>1,033,023</td>
<td>1,021,003</td>
<td>302,366</td>
<td>522,160</td>
<td>57,275</td>
<td>13,035</td>
<td>6,612</td>
<td>6,122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forward sortation area</td>
<td>1,625</td>
<td>1,538</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>418</td>
<td>526</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postal code&lt;sup&gt;SM&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>805,640</td>
<td>834,056</td>
<td>30,875</td>
<td>3,376</td>
<td>27,852</td>
<td>58,617</td>
<td>21,762</td>
<td>278,844</td>
<td>24,598</td>
<td>21,923</td>
<td>80,548</td>
<td>77,425</td>
<td>988</td>
<td>578</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:

1. Census metropolitan areas, census agglomerations, large urban population centres and small population centres crossing provincial boundaries are counted in both provinces, and, therefore, do not add up to the national total.

Geographic attributes: Adjusted counts

Part A – Short definition:

After a census, Statistics Canada makes public the total number of persons and the total number of dwellings counted in a given area, for example, in a municipality. By the next census, the municipality's geographic boundaries may have changed, especially if it has annexed part of another municipality or has merged with another municipality. When a boundary change occurs between censuses, the population and dwelling counts for the geographic areas affected by the boundary change are revised (adjusted). The adjusted counts show what the counts (the total number of persons and the total number of dwellings) from the previous census would be for the current census boundaries.

Part B – Detailed definition:

'Adjusted counts' refer to previous census population and dwelling counts that were adjusted (i.e., recompiled) to reflect current census boundaries, when a boundary change occurs between the two censuses.


Remarks:

When a boundary change occurs, the population and dwellings affected are determined by examining the collection documents from the previous census. The dwellings affected by the boundary change are identified from the collection maps. Once the affected dwellings are identified, it is possible to establish the population affected. These counts are then added to the geographic area that has increased in size and subtracted from the geographic area that has decreased in size.

Boundary changes to standard geographic areas between censuses are generally flagged in census outputs. This is done to warn users doing trend or longitudinal analysis that the areas being compared have changed over time. However, by comparing the final population or dwelling counts from the previous census to the adjusted counts, the user can judge the significance of the boundary change.

In the case of new areas (e.g., census subdivision incorporations), adjusted counts are required to permit the calculation of change. For dissolutions or major boundary changes, the use of adjusted counts instead of the previous census final counts often provides a better measure of trends by removing the effect of the boundary change from the calculation.

Refer to the related definition of census subdivision (CSD).

Changes prior to the current census:

Not applicable

Geographic attributes: Census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ)

Part A – Short definition:

Category assigned to a municipality not included in either a census metropolitan area (CMA) or a census agglomeration (CA). A municipality within a province is assigned to a census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ) category depending on the percentage of its resident employed labour force that commute to work in the core of any CMA or CA. A separate category is assigned to the municipalities in the territories that are not part of a CA.
Censuses subdivisions (CSDs) outside CMAs and CAs are assigned to the following MIZ categories:

- Strong metropolitan influenced zone
- Moderate metropolitan influenced zone
- Weak metropolitan influenced zone
- No metropolitan influenced zone
- Territories (outside CAs)

Part B – Detailed definition:

The census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ) is a concept that geographically differentiates the area of Canada outside census metropolitan areas (CMAs) and census agglomerations (CAs). Censuses subdivisions (CSDs) within provinces that are outside CMAs and CAs are assigned to one of four categories according to the degree of influence (strong, moderate, weak or no influence) that the CMAs or CAs have on them. CSDs within the territories that are outside CAs are assigned to a separate category.

Censuses subdivisions within provinces are assigned to a MIZ category based on the percentage of their resident employed labour force that commutes to work in the core(s) of CMAs or CAs. CSDs with the same degree of influence tend to be clustered. They form zones around CMAs and CAs that progress through the categories from 'strong' to 'no' influence as distance from the CMAs and CAs increases. As many CSDs in the territories are very large and sparsely populated, the commuting flow of the resident employed labour force is unstable. For this reason, CSDs in the territories that are outside CAs are assigned to a separate category that is not based on their commuting flows.

CSDs outside CMAs and CAs are assigned to the following MIZ categories:

1. **Strong metropolitan influenced zone**: This category includes CSDs in provinces where at least 30% of the CSD’s resident employed labour force commute to work in any CMA or CA. It excludes CSDs with fewer than 40 persons in their resident employed labour force.

2. **Moderate metropolitan influenced zone**: This category includes CSDs in provinces where at least 5% but less than 30% of the CSD’s resident employed labour force commute to work in any CMA or CA. It excludes CSDs with fewer than 40 persons in their resident employed labour force.

3. **Weak metropolitan influenced zone**: This category includes CSDs in provinces where more than 0% but less than 5% of the CSD’s resident employed labour force commute to work in any CMA or CA. It excludes CSDs with fewer than 40 persons in their resident employed labour force.

4. **No metropolitan influenced zone**: This category includes CSDs in provinces where none of the CSD’s resident employed labour force commute to work in any CMA or CA. It also includes CSDs in provinces with fewer than 40 persons in their resident employed labour force.

5. **Territories (outside CAs)**: This category includes CSDs in the territories outside CAs.


Remarks:

The MIZ is a concept applied, for statistical analysis purposes, to CSDs outside CMAs and CAs. All CSDs in Canada are either a component of a CMA or a CA or not a component (outside CMAs and CAs). The MIZ provides users with a more detailed geographic identity for the CSDs outside CMAs and CAs. As with CMAs and CAs, the allocation of a CSD to a MIZ category was determined using commuting flows of the resident employed labour force derived from the 2006 Census place of work data.
The calculation of the commuting flows for MIZ differs from the calculation used for CSD inclusion in CMAs or CAs. For the MIZ concept, the percentage of the resident employed labour force living in a particular CSD outside CMAs and CAs and working in the core of any CMA or CA are combined to determine the degree of influence that one or more CMAs or CAs have on that CSD. The resulting percentage then determines the MIZ category assigned to the CSD, as follows:

1. **Strong metropolitan influenced zone**: This category includes CSDs in provinces where a commuting flow of at least 30% of the CSD's resident employed labour force commute to work in any CMA or CA. It excludes CSDs with fewer than 40 persons in their resident employed labour force.

2. **Moderate metropolitan influenced zone**: This category includes CSDs in provinces where at least 5% but less than 30% of the CSD's resident employed labour force commute to work in any CMA or CA. It excludes CSDs with fewer than 40 persons in their resident employed labour force.

3. **Weak metropolitan influenced zone**: This category includes CSDs in provinces where more than 0% but less than 5% of the CSD's resident employed labour force commute to work in any CMA or CA. It excludes CSDs with fewer than 40 persons in their resident employed labour force.

4. **No metropolitan influenced zone**: This category includes CSDs in provinces where none of the CSD's resident employed labour force commute to work in any CMA or CA. It also includes CSDs in provinces with fewer than 40 persons in their resident employed labour force.

5. **Territories (outside CAs)**: This category includes CSDs in the territories outside CAs.

Table 3 shows the number of census subdivisions by the Statistical Area Classification (SAC) for Canada, provinces and territories.

Refer to the related definitions of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); census subdivision (CSD); core, fringe and rural area; Statistical Area Classification (SAC) and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

**Changes prior to the current census:**

Not applicable

**Geographic attributes: Geographic code**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Numerical identifier assigned to a geographic area. Every kind of geographic area in Canada has its own type of geographic code. For example, the geographic code assigned to a town makes it possible to distinguish that town from any other towns with the same name that is located in a different province.

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

A geographic code is a numerical identifier assigned to a geographic area. The code is used to identify and access standard geographic areas for the purposes of data storage, retrieval and display.

Remarks:

Geographic codes are used in combination with the province/territory code and other higher level geographic area codes in order to uniquely identify each geographic unit in Canada.

The Standard Geographical Classification (SGC), Statistics Canada’s official classification of geographic areas, provides unique codes for three hierarchically-related geographic areas: provinces and territories, census divisions and census subdivisions.

For further details, refer to the description of geographic code in the definitions of census agricultural region (CAR); census consolidated subdivision (CCS); census division (CD); census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); census subdivision (CSD); census tract (CT); designated place (DPL); dissemination area (DA); dissemination block (DB); economic region (ER); federal electoral district (FED); population centre (POPCTR); province or territory and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC). Also refer to the 2011 Standard Geographical Classification (SGC), Volumes I and II (Catalogue nos. 12-571-X and 12-572-X).

Changes prior to the current census:

Since 1981, the Standard Geographical Classification has been the sole official geographic classification system used for disseminating data for provinces/territories, census divisions and census subdivisions.

For 1976 and 1971, both the SGC and census codes were used to disseminate census data.

Prior to 1971, only census codes were used to disseminate census data.

Geographic attributes: Land area

Part A – Short definition:

Number of square kilometres of land in a given geographic area (e.g., a province, a territory, a city).

Part B – Detailed definition:

Land area is the area in square kilometres of the land-based portions of standard geographic areas. Land area data are unofficial and are provided for the sole purpose of calculating population density.


Remarks:

Land area data for the standard geographic areas reflect the boundaries in effect on January 1, 2011 (the geographic reference date for the 2011 Census of Canada). The data are available for all standard geographic areas.

The data are derived from the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI), including water polygon layers used in the process for calculating land area. The area calculations are computed from data that are transformed from a Lambert conformal conic projection to an Albers equal-area projection, since the properties of an equal area projection are indispensable for calculating land area. The same projection parameters (two standard parallels, central meridian and latitude of projection origin) are used for each province or territory.

Land area is calculated using ArcGIS® software. There is a two-stage aggregation procedure. First, the data are calculated and stored in square kilometres at the census block (CB) level to eight decimal places and then
aggregated to the dissemination block (DB) level and rounded to four decimal places. Second, the DB data are individually aggregated to each higher level standard geographic area.

Since the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) is a digital base using three input map scales (1:50,000, 1:250,000 and 1:1,000,000), greater land area accuracy is achieved at larger scales – that is, there is less generalization regarding the symbolization and number of hydrographic features. Land area errors may occur due to digitizing or linkage discrepancies, and when water polygons do not line up or are symbolized differently between different map scales.

The source layer for water has changed in British Columbia for 2011. This may result in varying land area calculations as compared to previous censuses. Users should note that even where the boundaries of standard geographic areas did not change between censuses, the land areas may differ due to geometry shifts. The shifts are caused by a change in the underlying database architecture and by improvements in the absolute positional accuracy of some of the roads.

Refer to related definitions of dissemination block (DB); geographic reference date; population density and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Note:

1. A census block (CB) is an area bounded on all sides by roads and/or boundaries of standard geographic areas. Census blocks cover all the territory of Canada. They are the smallest geographic area for which population and dwelling counts are stored. It must be noted that CBs are not available to the public, but are used internally as the smallest level of geography upon which both collection and dissemination geographies are built.

Changes prior to the current census:

For 2006, the data were derived from the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) geospatial layers, including selected water polygons. Land area data were calculated using ArcGIS® software. The data were calculated and stored at the basic block (BB) level at eight decimal places and then aggregated to the dissemination block (DB) level and rounded to four decimal places. The DB data were then individually aggregated to all higher level standard geographic areas. Land area data were not disseminated for basic blocks.

For 2001, land area data were calculated using ArcGIS® software. Separate projection parameters (two standard parallels, central meridian and latitude of projection origin) were used for each province or territory. As well, there was only a one-stage aggregation procedure. The data were calculated and stored at the basic block (BB) level at eight decimal places and then aggregated to all higher level geographic areas and rounded to four decimal places. Land area data were not disseminated for basic blocks.

Prior to 2001, land area was manually calculated using a planimeter. Measurements were normally taken three times for each geographic unit and then averaged. The map scales generally varied between 1:50,000 and 1:250,000. In densely and sparsely populated regions of Canada, larger or smaller scales may have been used. Only discernible bodies of water found on the maps were excluded. The planimeter gave accurate readings for only small zones – and consequently, large geographic units were subdivided into smaller ones and measured individually; the individual parts were then added together.

Boundaries that changed from one census to another were not measured in their entirety. Only the land area gained or lost due to a boundary revision/update was measured, and then added to or subtracted from the original figure.

Land area measurements for census subdivisions (CSDs) were aggregated to obtain the land areas for the higher level geographic units – namely, primary census metropolitan areas/primary census agglomerations (PCMAs/PCAs), census metropolitan areas/census agglomerations (CMAs/CAAs), census consolidated subdivisions (CCSs), census divisions (CDs), economic regions (ERs), and provinces/territories. Land area measurements were done separately for urban areas (UAs), designated places (DPLs) and census tracts (CTs). Data were not available for enumeration areas (EAs) and federal electoral districts (FEDs).
The land area data were subject to a number of errors, including measurement, coding and transcription, and processing errors – and overall, cumulative historic errors. As well, a limited number of tests revealed logical inconsistencies; for example, there were cases where the land area was greater than the total area.

Prior to 1996, some CSDs had land areas of zero (0) because their official limits were unknown.

For 1991, land area was called ‘net land area’.

Prior to 1976, land area data were expressed in square miles only.

**Note:**

2. The basic block (BB) is the smallest polygon unit in the Spatial Data Infrastructure. BBs are formed by the intersection of all roads and boundary arcs of standard geographic areas that do not follow roads.

**Geographic attributes: Population density**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Population density is the number of persons per square kilometre.


**Remarks:**

The calculation for population density is total population divided by land area. The data are available for all standard geographic areas.

Population density data support a variety of applications, such as delineating population centres, determining the population ecumene, as well as spatial analysis.

Refer to related definitions of ecumene; land area and population centre (POPCTR).

**Changes prior to the current census:**

Prior to 2001, population density data were available for all standard geographic areas, except enumeration areas (EAs) and federal electoral districts (FEDs).

For 1976, population density data were expressed in both square kilometres and square miles.

Prior to 1976, population density data were expressed in square miles only.

**Geographic Classifications: Standard Geographical Classification (SGC)**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable
Part B – Detailed definition:

The Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2011 is Statistics Canada's main classification of geographic areas in Canada. It is designed to classify statistical information by geographic areas. The classification consists of four levels: geographical regions of Canada, provinces and territories, census divisions (such as counties and regional municipalities) and census subdivisions (such as municipalities). The four geographic levels are hierarchically related; a seven-digit code is used to show this relationship.

The 2011 version of the SGC includes three classification variants:

- **Statistical Area Classification – Variant of SGC 2011**
  This classifies census subdivisions by census metropolitan areas (CMAs), census agglomerations (CAs) and census metropolitan influenced zones (MIZ) in the areas outside CMAs and CAs.

- **Statistical Area Classification by Province and Territory – Variant of SGC 2011**
  This classifies census subdivisions by census metropolitan areas (CMAs), census agglomerations (CAs) and census metropolitan influenced zones (MIZ) in the areas outside CMAs and CAs. In this classification variant, these categories are further classified by provinces and territories.

- **Economic Regions – Variant of SGC 2011**
  This classifies census subdivisions into census divisions and economic regions.


**Remarks:**

Census subdivisions (CSDs) aggregate to census divisions (CDs), which aggregate to province or territory which, in turn, aggregate to geographical regions of Canada (Figure 2).

Figure 2 Standard geographical classification (SGC) hierarchy

![Standard geographical classification hierarchy diagram](image)

The hierarchical relationship is reflected in the seven-digit SGC code. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PR-CD-CSD code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 12 06 008      | Province 12: Nova Scotia  
                 CD 06: Lunenburg  
                 CSD 008: Mahone Bay |
| 35 06 008      | Province 35: Ontario  
                 CD 06: Ottawa  
                 CSD 008: Ottawa |

**Changes to the Standard Geographical Classification for the 2011 Census**

This version introduces structural changes to the classification. It introduces a new level to the standard: geographical regions of Canada. The geographical regions of Canada are:

- Atlantic
- Quebec
- Ontario
- Prairies
- British Columbia
- Territories

They represent aggregations of provinces and territories.

The structural change also introduces the new classification variants 'Statistical Area Classification – Variant of SGC 2011' and 'Statistical Area Classification by Province and Territory – Variant of SGC 2011.' These include the census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations and classify the areas of Canada outside CMAs and CAs by census metropolitan influenced zones. Standard terminology has been established for the census metropolitan influenced zones.

The economic regions are now formally recognized as a part of the SGC and are included in the classification variant: 'Economic Regions – Variant of SGC 2011.'

Refer to the related definitions of census division (CD); census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ); census subdivision (CSD); economic region (ER) and province or territory. The Standard Geographical Classification is presented in the 2011 *Standard Geographical Classification (SGC)*, Volumes I and II (Catalogue nos. 12-571-X and 12-572-X).

**Changes prior to the current census:**

In 1976 and 1971, both SGC and census codes were used to disseminate census data.

In 1966 and 1961, only census codes were used to disseminate census data.
Geographic classifications: Statistical Area Classification (SAC)

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

The Statistical Area Classification (SAC) groups census subdivisions according to whether they are a component of a census metropolitan area, a census agglomeration or a census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ). The MIZ classifies all CSDs in provinces and territories that are outside census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations.

The Statistical Area Classification is a variant of the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC). Census subdivisions (CSDs) form the lowest level of the classification variant. The next level consists of individual census metropolitan areas (CMAs), census agglomerations (CAs) and census metropolitan influenced zones (MIZs).

The highest level consists of three categories that cover all of the land mass of Canada:

• census metropolitan areas
• census agglomerations
• outside census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations.

The SAC provides unique numeric identification (codes) for these hierarchically-related geographic areas. It was established for the purpose of reporting statistics.


Remarks:

In using the Statistical Area Classification (SAC) for census data tabulations, it is possible to sum census data automatically for census subdivisions (CSDs) as follows:

• all CSDs in census metropolitan areas (CMAs)
• all CSDs in census agglomerations (CAs)
• all CSDs in the provinces in the strong metropolitan influenced zone category
• all CSDs in the provinces in the moderate metropolitan influenced zone category
• all CSDs in the provinces in the weak metropolitan influenced zone category
• all CSDs in the provinces in the no metropolitan influenced zone category
• CSDs in the three territories (Yukon, Northwest Territories and Nunavut), except those that are components of a CA (currently the CAs of Whitehorse and Yellowknife).

Care should be exercised when applying the MIZ concept in the three territories. As many CSDs in the territories are very large and sparsely populated, the commuting flow of the resident employed labour force is unstable. For this reason, the CSDs in the territories that are outside CAs are assigned to a territories category that is not based on their commuting flows.
Figure 3 shows the hierarchical structure of the SAC.

**Figure 3  Statistical area classification (SAC) hierarchy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inside</th>
<th>Outside</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>census metropolitan areas</td>
<td>census metropolitan areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and census agglomerations</td>
<td>and census agglomerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CMA</strong>s</td>
<td><strong>CAs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census metropolitan areas</td>
<td>Census agglomerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MIZ</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census metropolitan influenced zones</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Territories</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CSD**

Census subdivision

Note:
1. Census metropolitan influenced zones (MIZ) categories are strong, moderate, weak and no influence


Table 2 shows the population distribution of Canada from the 2006 Census using the SAC, and Table 3 shows the number of census subdivisions in each category of the SAC for the 2011 Census.

**Table 2  Population distribution by the Statistical Area Classification (SAC), 2006 adjusted population and 2011 geography, 2006 Census**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statistical Area Classification</th>
<th>Total population</th>
<th>% of total population</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Census metropolitan area</td>
<td>21,534,063</td>
<td>68.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census agglomeration</td>
<td>4,136,342</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strong metropolitan influenced zone</td>
<td>1,521,507</td>
<td>4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate metropolitan influenced zone</td>
<td>2,344,811</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weak metropolitan influenced zone</td>
<td>1,807,499</td>
<td>5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No metropolitan influenced zone</td>
<td>208,963</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Territories</td>
<td>59,712</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Canada total</strong></td>
<td><strong>31,612,897</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3 Number of census subdivisions by the Statistical Area Classification (SAC), 2011 Census

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Province/territory</th>
<th>Total CSDs</th>
<th>Number of census subdivisions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CMAs</td>
<td>CAs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Newfoundland and Labrador | 376   | 13  | 15         | 30          | 134      | 75     | 109         | ...
| Prince Edward Island      | 113   | 0   | 23         | 32          | 48       | 6      | 4           | ...
| Nova Scotia               | 99    | 5   | 18         | 3           | 23       | 39     | 11          | ...
| New Brunswick             | 273   | 31  | 45         | 32          | 91       | 56     | 18          | ...
| Quebec                    | 1,285 | 157 | 81         | 237         | 490      | 145    | 175         | ...
| Ontario                   | 574   | 92  | 56         | 95          | 143      | 87     | 101         | ...
| Manitoba                  | 287   | 12  | 8          | 17          | 61       | 116    | 73          | ...
| Saskatchewan              | 959   | 41  | 25         | 62          | 248      | 208    | 375         | ...
| Alberta                   | 435   | 44  | 44         | 52          | 111      | 106    | 78          | ...
| British Columbia          | 743   | 74  | 137        | 34          | 92       | 138    | 268         | ...
| Yukon                     | 37    | 0   | 7          | …           | …        | …      | …           | 30
| Northwest Territories     | 41    | 0   | 1          | …           | …        | …      | …           | 40
| Nunavut                   | 31    | 0   | 0          | …           | …        | …      | …           | 31
| Canada                    | 5,253 | 469 | 460        | 594         | 1,441    | 976    | 1,212       | 101

… not applicable


Refer to the related definitions of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ); census subdivision (CSD); core, fringe and rural area and to the geographic working paper entitled Census Metropolitan Area and Census Agglomeration Influenced Zones (MIZ): A Description of the Methodology (Catalogue no. 92F0138MIE2000002).

Changes prior to the current census:
Not applicable

Geographic files: Cartographic boundary files (CBFs)

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:
Cartographic boundary files (CBFs) contain the boundaries of standard geographic areas together with the shoreline around Canada. Selected inland lakes and rivers are available as supplementary layers.
          1996 (digital cartographic files)

Remarks:
The boundaries of the geographic areas reflect those in effect on January 1, 2011 (the geographic reference date for the 2011 Census of Canada).

Cartographic boundary files are created by integrating Canada's external shoreline with the selected source boundary layer from the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI). The boundaries extending into water bodies are ‘erased’ and replaced by the shoreline and offshore islands. The hydrographic features are also from the SDI. Further adjustments are made, such as the feature selection and the ranking of features for scale-dependent mapping.

Cartographic boundary files (CBFs) are intended for thematic mapping and analysis purposes. The positional accuracy does not support cadastral, surveying or engineering applications. CBFs can be used in conjunction with road network files (RNFs), since both products are derived from the same sources, and features are generalized in the same manner. The roads in RNFs provide additional geographic context when used with CBFs. CBFs can be used with Census of Population, Census of Agriculture or other Statistics Canada data. Geographic codes provide the linkage between the statistical data and geographic areas.

The maps in Figure 4 below show the differences between cartographic boundary files and digital boundary files.

Figure 4  Example of a cartographic boundary file and a digital boundary file (provinces and territories)


Refer to the related definitions of digital boundary files (DBFs); road network file (RNF);
Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) and to the Boundary Files, Reference Guide (Catalogue no. 92-160-G).
Changes prior to the current census:
Not applicable

Geographic files: Digital boundary files (DBFs)

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:
Digital boundary files (DBFs) portray the boundaries used for Census data collection and, therefore, often extend as straight lines into bodies of water.


Remarks:
The boundaries of the geographic areas reflect those in effect on January 1, 2011 (the geographic reference date for the 2011 Census of Canada).
The boundaries are generated from the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI). The boundaries extend into bodies of water, rather than follow the shoreline, to ensure that limits are followed and that all land and islands are included for census enumeration. Thus, boundaries may cut through lakes, extend into oceans, or follow the approximate centres of rivers.
Digital boundary files are not suitable for computing land area, thematic mapping applications or other types of analyses requiring the realistic depiction of shorelines and water bodies, unless the user intends to apply their own shorelines to the boundaries.

Refer to the related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); road network file (RNF); Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) and to the Boundary Files, Reference Guide (Catalogue no. 92-160-G).

Changes prior to the current census:
Not applicable.

Geographic files: Road network file (RNF)

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:
The road network file (RNF) contains streets, street names, types, directions and address ranges. Address ranges are dwelling-based.

Censuses:  2011, 2006, 2001 (road network files - cover the entire country)  
1996 (street network files - cover large urban centres only)

Remarks:

The road network file (RNF) is based on the road network from the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI). Statistics Canada maintains the RNF to support the census and other activities. The relative position of road network features is important for census enumeration and reference purposes; therefore, topological accuracy takes precedence over absolute positional accuracy. The RNF does not contain street information required for route optimization. For example, data on one-way streets, dead-ends and other street obstacles are not included in the RNF. Consequently, this file is not recommended for engineering applications, emergency dispatching services, surveying or legal applications.

The road network file contains street arcs with either 'true' address ranges, imputed address ranges, or no address range. Imputed address ranges are not meant to replace true address ranges for any purpose other than address geocoding. Thus, if the files are to be used for computer-aided dispatch or similar purposes (that require an address to be matched to a block or street), it may be necessary to supplement the file with local knowledge by updating existing true addresses and replacing imputed addresses.

The limitations of the road network file should be recognized for uses other than the mapping, analysis and retrieval of census data.

Refer to the related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); digital boundary files (DBFs); Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) and to the Road Network File, Reference Guide (Catalogue no. 92-500-G).

Changes prior to the current census:

Not applicable

Geographic infrastructure: National Geographic Database (NGD)

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

The National Geographic Database (NGD) is a shared database between Statistics Canada and Elections Canada. The database contains roads, road names and address ranges. It also includes separate reference layers containing physical and cultural features, such as hydrography and hydrographic names, railroads and power transmission lines.

Censuses: 2011, 2006

Remarks:

The National Geographic Database (NGD) was created in 1997 as a joint Statistics Canada/Elections Canada initiative to develop and maintain a national road network file serving the needs of both organizations. The active building of the NGD (that is, integrating the files from Statistics Canada, Elections Canada and Natural Resources Canada) occurred from 1998 to 2000. Thereafter, Statistics Canada and Elections Canada reconciled their digital boundary holdings to the new database's road network geometry so that operational products could be derived.

Since 2001, the focus of the NGD has been on intensive data quality improvements, especially regarding the quality and currency of its road network coverage. There has been considerable expansion of road names and civic addresses ranges, as well as the addition of hydrographic names.
Since 2009, the NGD has converged its data holdings to provincially-sourced data in all of British Columbia and six census divisions in Ontario, specifically Halton, Hamilton, Ottawa, Peel, Toronto and Waterloo.

Priorities for road network file maintenance are determined by Statistics Canada and Elections Canada, enabling the NGD to meet the joint operational needs of both agencies in support of census and electoral activities.

The main sources for the NGD include:
- Statistics Canada's street network files
- Elections Canada's road network file
- National Topographic Database (NTDB) digital coverage at 1:50,000 and 1:250,000 from Natural Resources Canada, and Digital Chart of the World (DCW) coverage at 1:1,000,000
- provincially-sourced data sets
- other information from field operation activities, municipal maps and private sector licenced holdings.

The reference layers are not edge-matched at former NTDB tile limits.

Since the primary purpose of NGD is to support census and electoral activities, topological accuracy takes precedence over absolute positional accuracy.

The data are maintained and stored in the Lambert conformal conic projection based on the North American Datum of 1983 (NAD83).

Refer to the related definitions of [coordinate system](#); [datum](#); [map projection](#) and [Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI)](#).

**Changes prior to the current census:**

Not applicable

**Geographic infrastructure: Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI)**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

The Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) is an internal maintenance database that is not disseminated outside of Statistics Canada. It contains roads, road names and address ranges from the National Geographic Database (NGD), as well as boundary arcs of standard geographic areas that do not follow roads, all in one integrated line layer. The database also includes a related polygon layer consisting of basic blocks (BB), boundary layers of standard geographic areas, and derived attribute tables, as well as reference layers containing physical and cultural features (such as hydrography, railroads and power transmission lines) from the NGD. The SDI supports a wide range of census operations, such as the maintenance and delineation of the boundaries of standard geographic areas (including the automated delineation of dissemination blocks and population centres) and geocoding. The SDI is also the source for generating many geography products for the 2011 Census, such as cartographic boundary files and road network files.

**Censuses:**

2011, 2006 (Spatial Data Infrastructure)

2001 (National Geographic Base)
Remarks:

The data are maintained and stored in the Lambert conformal conic projection based on the North American Datum of 1983 (NAD83). Links to other data holdings, such as the address register and postal code files, are incorporated into the database.

Given the enhancements to the SDI, primarily through the integration of improved road network data from the National Geographic Database (NGD), geography products for the 2011 Census allow users to geographically reference census data more accurately when compared to the 2006 Census products (e.g., cartographic boundary files, digital boundary files, reference maps, road network files).

Product files from the SDI are available in the Geography Division’s data warehouse (GeoDepot).

Refer to the related definitions of block-face; cartographic boundary files (CBFs); coordinate system; datum; digital boundary files (DBFs); dissemination block (DB); geocoding; map projection; National Geographic Database (NGD); reference map; representative point and road network file (RNF), and related reference guides.

Note:

1. Basic blocks are the smallest polygon units in the database, and are formed by the intersection of all roads and the arcs of geographic areas that do not follow roads.

Changes prior to the current census:

For 2001, the internal database was called the National Geographic Base (NGB), which was divided into National Topographic Data Base (NTDB) map tiles.

Geographic units: Census agglomeration (CA)

See the definition of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA).

Geographic units: Census agricultural region (CAR)

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

Census agricultural regions (CARs) are composed of groups of adjacent census divisions. In Saskatchewan, census agricultural regions are made up of groups of adjacent census consolidated subdivisions, but these groups do not necessarily respect census division boundaries.


Remarks:

Census agricultural regions are not defined in Yukon, the Northwest Territories and Nunavut. Also, in Prince Edward Island, for the purpose of disseminating data, each of the three existing census divisions (counties) is treated as a census agricultural region.
In the Prairie Provinces, census agricultural regions are commonly referred to as crop districts.

Each census agricultural region is assigned a two-digit code. In order to uniquely identify each CAR in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code must precede the CAR code. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PR-CAR code</th>
<th>CAR name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>46 03</td>
<td>Agricultural Region 3 (Man.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59 03</td>
<td>Thompson-Okanagan (B.C.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of census agricultural regions by province.

Census agricultural regions are used by the Census of Agriculture for disseminating agricultural statistics.

**Changes prior to the current census:**

Prior to 1996, census agricultural regions were called 'agricultural regions.'

**Geographic units: Census consolidated subdivision (CCS)**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

A census consolidated subdivision (CCS) is a group of adjacent census subdivisions. Generally, the smaller, more densely-populated census subdivisions (towns, villages, etc.) are combined with the surrounding, larger, more rural census subdivision, in order to create a geographic level between the census subdivision and the census division.


**Remarks:**

Census consolidated subdivisions are defined within census divisions (CDs) according to the following criteria:

1. A census subdivision (CSD) with a land area greater than 25 square kilometres can form a CCS of its own. Census subdivisions having a land area smaller than 25 square kilometres are usually grouped with a larger census subdivision.

2. A census subdivision with a land area greater than 25 square kilometres and surrounded on more than half its perimeter by another census subdivision is usually included as part of the CCS formed by the surrounding census subdivision.

3. A census subdivision with a population greater than 100,000 according to the last census usually forms a CCS on its own.

4. The census consolidated subdivision’s name usually coincides with its largest census subdivision component in terms of land area.
The geographic code assigned to each census consolidated subdivision is the seven-digit Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) code of one of its component CSDs, usually the one with the largest land area (Figure 5 shows a hypothetical example). This assignment process also makes the CCS code unique across Canada. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PR-CD-CCS code</th>
<th>CCS name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24 32 045</td>
<td>Plessisville (Que.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 32 045</td>
<td>Blandford-Blenheim (Ont.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 5  Example of census consolidated subdivisions (CCSs) and census subdivisions (CSDs)


Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of census consolidated subdivisions by province and territory.

CCSs are used primarily for disseminating Census of Agriculture data. They form the building block for census agricultural regions in Saskatchewan. In all other provinces, census agricultural regions are made up of groups of census divisions.

CCSs are relatively stable geographic units because they have infrequent boundary changes and therefore can be useful for longitudinal analysis.

Refer to the related definitions of census division (CD) and census subdivision (CSD).

Changes prior to the current census:

For 1991, significant boundary changes were made to CCSs in Quebec when census divisions were restructured to recognize the municipalités régionales de comté.

For 1976, the term 'census consolidated subdivision' was introduced. Prior to 1976, CCSs were referred to by the term 'reference code.'
Geographic units: **Census division (CD)**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Group of neighbouring municipalities joined together for the purposes of regional planning and managing common services (such as police or ambulance services). These groupings are established under laws in effect in certain provinces of Canada. For example, a census division might correspond to a county, *municipalité régionale de comté* or a regional district. In other provinces and the territories where laws do not provide for such areas, Statistics Canada defines equivalent areas for statistical reporting purposes in cooperation with these provinces and territories.

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Census division (CD) is the general term for provincially legislated areas (such as county, *municipalité régionale de comté* and regional district) or their equivalents. Census divisions are intermediate geographic areas between the province/territory level and the municipality (census subdivision).


**Remarks:**

Census divisions have been established in provincial law to facilitate regional planning, as well as the provision of services that can be more effectively delivered on a scale larger than a municipality. In Newfoundland and Labrador, Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta, Yukon, Northwest Territories and Nunavut, provincial or territorial law does not provide for these administrative geographic areas. Therefore, Statistics Canada, in cooperation with these provinces and territories, has created equivalent areas called census divisions for the purpose of disseminating statistical data. In Yukon, the census division is equivalent to the entire territory.

Next to provinces and territories, census divisions are the most stable administrative geographic areas, and are therefore often used in longitudinal analysis.

**Census division type**

Census divisions are classified into 12 types according to official designations adopted by provincial or territorial authorities. Two exceptions are ‘census division / division de recensement’ (CDR) and ‘territory / territoire’ (TER), which are geographic units created as equivalents by Statistics Canada, in cooperation with the provinces and territories, for the purpose of disseminating statistical data.

Table 4 shows census division types, their abbreviated forms, and their distribution by province and territory.
### Table 4 Census division types by province and territory, 2011 Census

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CDR Census division / Division de recensement</td>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT County / Comté</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTY County</td>
<td></td>
<td>41</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIS District</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM District municipality</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MB Management board</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRC Municipalité régionale de comté</td>
<td></td>
<td>81</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RD Regional district</td>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REG Region</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RM Regional municipality</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TE Territoire équivalent</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TER Territory / Territoire</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC United counties</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>293</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.L. Newfoundland and Labrador  
P.E.I. Prince Edward Island  
N.S. Nova Scotia  
N.B. New Brunswick  
Que. Quebec  
Ont. Ontario  
Man. Manitoba  
Sask. Saskatchewan  
Alta. Alberta  
B.C. British Columbia  
Y.T. Yukon Territory  
N.W.T. Northwest Territories  
Nvt. Nunavut

... not applicable

Census division code

The census division (CD) code is a two-digit code that is based on the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC). In order to uniquely identify each CD in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code must precede the two-digit CD code. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PR-CD code</th>
<th>CD name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13 01</td>
<td>Saint John (N.B.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 01</td>
<td>Les Îles-de-la-Madeleine (Que.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Changes to census divisions for the 2011 Census

The following CDs have had name or type changes for the 2011 Census:

- (CD 24 31) L’Amiante, MRC becomes Les Appalaches, MRC
- (CD 24 40) Asbestos, MRC becomes Les Sources, MRC
- (CD 24 53) Le Bas-Richelieu, MRC becomes Pierre-De Saurel, MRC
- (CD 35 10) Frontenac, MB becomes Frontenac, CTY.

In the Northwest Territories, the CDs have been restructured, increasing in number from two to six. The naming convention of CDs in the Northwest Territories is now:

- (CD 61 01) Region 1, REG
- (CD 61 02) Region 2, REG
- (CD 61 03) Region 3, REG
- (CD 61 04) Region 4, REG
- (CD 61 05) Region 5, REG
- (CD 61 06) Region 6, REG

The boundaries, names and codes of census divisions reflect those in effect on January 1, 2011, the geographic reference date for the 2011 Census of Canada. Information about any CD changes that were effective on or before the January 1, 2011 reference date must have been received by Statistics Canada prior to March 1, 2011, in order to be processed in time for the census.

Refer to the related definitions of census subdivision (CSD) and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes prior to the current census:

In 2006, the following changes were made to census divisions (CDs).

In New Brunswick, six municipalities (CSDs) straddled the legal county boundaries. In order to maintain the integrity of component municipalities, Statistics Canada modified the CD boundaries to ensure that the CSDs existed completely within the CD. For these six municipalities straddling county boundaries, the county in bold indicates the census division in which these municipalities are completely located:

- Belledune (Restigouche/Gloucester)
- Fredericton (York/Sunbury)
- Grand Falls / Grand-Sault (Victoria/Madawaska)
- Meductic (Carleton/York)
- Minto (Sunbury/Queens)
- Rogersville (Kent/Northumberland)

Three CD types were added. These included: county / comté (CT) in New Brunswick, management board (MB) in Ontario, and territoire équivalent (TÉ) in Quebec. One CD type in Quebec, communauté urbaine (CU), was replaced by territoire équivalent (TÉ). Two CD types were modified slightly. These included census division (DIV), which became census division / division de recensement (CDR), and territory (TER), which became territory / territoire (TER).
In Newfoundland and Labrador, Statistics Canada created a new CD in cooperation with the provincial authorities and the Nunatsiavut Government to represent the Labrador Inuit Settlement Area. The lands covered by this new CD, Division No. 11 (CD 10 11), were settled under the *Labrador Inuit Land Claims Agreement Act*, which was passed and received Royal Assent in December 2004. Five CSDs (Nain, Hopedale, Makkovik, Postville and Rigolet) existed completely within the newly created CD. Two unorganized CSDs (Subdivision C and Subdivision E) were split between the new CD, Division No. 11, and the old CD, Division No. 10.

The CD of Desjardins (CD 24 24) was dissolved. The CSDs of Pintendre, M (24 24 010), Saint-Joseph-de-la-Pointe-de-Lévy, P (24 24 015), and Lévis, V (24 24 020) (now part of CSD Lévis, V [24 25 213]) were annexed to Les Chutes-de-la-Chaudière (now Lévis, TÉ [CD 24 25]) and the CSD of Saint-Henri, M (24 24 005) was annexed to Bellechasse (CD 24 19). The deletion of Desjardins decreased the number of CDs in Quebec to 98.

In Ontario, Frontenac, CTY became Frontenac, MB; Haldimand-Norfolk, RM became Haldimand-Norfolk, CDR; and Brant, CTY became Brant, CDR.

To remain consistent with the conventions used for naming census subdivisions, all CD names had any reference to the associated CD type removed from their names. For example, Niagara Regional Municipality, RM (CD 35 26) became known as Niagara, RM and Perth County, CTY (CD 35 31) became known as Perth, CTY.

**Geographic units: Census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA)**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Area consisting of one or more neighbouring municipalities situated around a core. A census metropolitan area must have a total population of at least 100,000 of which 50,000 or more live in the core. A census agglomeration must have a core population of at least 10,000.

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

A census metropolitan area (CMA) or a census agglomeration (CA) is formed by one or more adjacent municipalities centred on a population centre (known as the core). A CMA must have a total population of at least 100,000 of which 50,000 or more must live in the core. A CA must have a core population of at least 10,000. To be included in the CMA or CA, other adjacent municipalities must have a high degree of integration with the core, as measured by commuting flows derived from previous census place of work data.

If the population of the core of a CA declines below 10,000, the CA is retired. However, once an area becomes a CMA, it is retained as a CMA even if its total population declines below 100,000 or the population of its core falls below 50,000. Small population centres with a population count of less than 10,000 are called fringe. All areas inside the CMA or CA that are not population centres are rural areas.

When a CA has a core of at least 50,000, it is subdivided into census tracts. Census tracts are maintained for the CA even if the population of the core subsequently falls below 50,000. All CMAs are subdivided into census tracts.


**Remarks:**

The terms ‘core,’ ‘fringe’ and ‘rural area’ replace the terms ‘urban core,’ ‘urban fringe’ and ‘rural fringe’ for the 2011 Census.
Cores

A census metropolitan area (CMA) or a census agglomeration (CA) can have more than one core. The core of a CMA must have a population of at least 50,000 and the core of a CA must have a population of at least 10,000. In all other cases where a CMA or a CA has more than one core, the additional cores are called secondary cores. When a CA is merged with a CMA, the core of the former CA also becomes a secondary core of the CMA. If the population of a fringe population centre exceeds 10,000, it becomes a secondary core of the CMA or CA in which it exists. See Merging adjacent CMAs and CAs (delineation rule 7).

Delineation rules for CMAs and CAs

A CMA or CA is delineated using adjacent municipalities (census subdivisions) as building blocks. These census subdivisions (CSDs) are included in the CMA or CA if they meet at least one of the following rules. The rules are ranked in order of priority. A CSD obeying the rules for two or more CMAs or CAs is included in the one for which it has the highest ranked rule. If the CSD meets rules that have the same rank, the decision is based on the population or the number of commuters involved. A CMA or CA is delineated to ensure spatial contiguity.

1. Core rule: The CSD falls completely or partly inside the core.

   A core hole is a CSD enclosed by a CSD that is at least partly within the urban core and must be included to maintain spatial contiguity. In Figure 6, CSDs A, B and C are included in the CMA or CA because of the core rule. CSD C is a core hole.
2. **Forward commuting flow rule:** Given a minimum of 100 commuters, at least 50% of the employed labour force living in the CSD works in the delineation core (see following note), as determined from commuting data based on the place of work question in the previous census.

**Note:** For CMA and CA delineation purposes, a delineation core is created respecting CSD limits. For a CSD to be included in the primary or the secondary delineation core, at least 75% of a CSD’s population must reside within the core. In Figure 7, CSD A is part of the delineation core since its entire population resides within the core. CSD B would also be part of the delineation core if at least 75% of its population resides within the core. For this example, we have assumed that less than 75% of the population of CSD B resides within the core; therefore, CSD B and its enclosed hole, CSD C, are not considered to be part of the delineation core.
3. **Reverse commuting flow rule:** Given a minimum of 100 commuters, at least 25% of the employed labour force working in the CSD lives in the delineation core as determined from commuting data based on the place of work question in the previous census. In Figure 8, at least 25% of the employed labour force working in CSD E lives in CSD A (see Note for rule 2).
**4. Spatial contiguity rule:** CSDs that do not meet a commuting flow threshold may be included in a CMA or CA, and CSDs that do meet a commuting flow threshold may be excluded from a CMA or CA.

Two situations can lead to inclusion or exclusion of a CSD in a CMA or CA for reasons of spatial contiguity. Specifically these are:

**Outlier** — A CSD (F in Figure 9) with sufficient commuting flows (either forward or reverse) is enclosed by a CSD (G in Figure 9) with insufficient commuting flows, but which is adjacent to the CMA or CA. When this situation arises, the CSDs within and including the enclosing CSD are grouped to create a minimum CSD set (F + G). The total commuting flows for the minimum CSD set are then considered for inclusion in the CMA or CA. If the minimum CSD set has sufficient commuting flows (either forward or reverse), then all of its CSDs are included in the CMA or CA.

**Hole** — A CSD (H in Figure 9) with insufficient commuting flows (either forward or reverse) is enclosed by a CSD (I in Figure 9) with sufficient commuting flows, and which is adjacent to the CMA or CA. When this situation arises, the CSDs within and including the enclosing CSD are grouped to create a minimum CSD set.
(H + I). The total commuting flows for the minimum CSD set are then considered for inclusion in the CMA or CA. If the minimum CSD set has sufficient commuting flows (either forward or reverse), then all of its CSDs are included in the CMA or CA.

**Figure 9  Spatial contiguity rule**

**Census subdivisions included**
- A Under rule 1 – core
- B Under rule 1 – core
- C Under rule 1 – core (core hole)
- D Under rule 2 – forward commuting flow
- E Under rule 3 – reverse commuting flow
- F Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity rule (outlier)
- G Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity rule
- H Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity rule (hole)
- I Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity rule
- J
- K

Notes:
- CSD F (outlier) has sufficient flows – either >=50% forward or >=25% reverse commuting flows
- CSD G has insufficient flows – has < 50% forward and < 25% reverse commuting flows
- CSD H (hole) has insufficient flows – has < 50% forward and < 25% reverse commuting flows
- CSD I has sufficient flows – either >=50% forward or >=25% reverse commuting flows


5. **Historical comparability rule**: To maintain historical comparability for CMAs and larger CAs (those with census tracts in the previous census), CSDs are retained in the CMA or CA even if their commuting flow percentages fall below the commuting flow thresholds (rules 2 and 3). See Figure 10.
An exception to the historical comparability rule is made in cases where CSDs have undergone changes to their boundaries, such as annexations. To determine whether to keep or exclude a CSD, place of work data are retabulated for the CSD with boundary changes, and a decision to include or exclude the CSD is made according to the previous rules.

6. **Manual adjustments**: A CMA or CA represents an area that is economically and socially integrated. However, there are certain limitations to the extent by which this ideal can be met. Since the CSDs that are used as building blocks in CMA and CA delineation are administrative units, their boundaries are not always the most suitable with respect to CMA and CA delineation. There are always situations where the application of the above rules creates undesirable outcomes, or where the rules cannot be easily applied. In these circumstances, a manual override is sometimes applied to ensure that the integrity of the program is retained. For example, in Miramichi CA (New Brunswick), the CSD of Red Bank 4, IRI, which is in two parts, is included to maintain spatial contiguity.
7. **Merging adjacent CMAs and CAs**: A CA adjacent to a CMA can be merged with the CMA if the total percentage commuting interchange between the CA and CMA is equal to at least 35% of the employed labour force living in the CA, based on place of work data from the previous census. The total percentage commuting interchange is the sum of the commuting flow in both directions between the CMA and the CA as a percentage of the labour force living in the CA (i.e., resident employed labour force).

\[
\text{Total resident employed labour force living in the CA and working in the CMA} + \text{Total resident employed labour force living in the CMA and working in the CA} \times 100% = \text{Resident employed labour force of the CA}
\]

If more than one CA is adjacent to the same CMA, each CA is assessed separately with the CMA. Several CAs may be merged with one CMA. If the total percentage commuting interchange is less than 35%, the CMA and CA are not merged. After a CA is merged with a CMA, the core of the former CA is called the secondary core of the CMA. See Figure 11.

**Figure 11 Example of a merged census metropolitan area and census agglomeration**

![Diagram of merged census metropolitan area and census agglomeration]

Note:
1. Resident employed labour force of the census agglomeration.

Naming convention for CMAs and CAs

Prior to May 25, 2009, the convention for the naming of a CMA or CA was based on the name of the principal population centre or largest city at the time the CMA or CA was first formed. This standard had been used since the 1971 Census. Through the years, the CMA and CA names have remained stable. The most important changes resulted from name changes to the census subdivisions (resulting from municipal dissolutions, incorporations and name changes).

Guidelines for CMA name change requests

The key revision to the convention is the establishment of 'Guidelines for CMA name change requests' as published in Preliminary 2011 Census Metropolitan and Census Agglomeration Delineation (Catalogue no. 92F0138M). Below are the guidelines for requesting a change:

1. CMA names can consist of up to three legislated municipal names of eligible census subdivisions (CSDs) that are components of the CMA. However, the number of name elements in any new CMA name request is limited to five. If any of the eligible CSD names are already hyphenated or compound, the number of CSD names will be limited to two or one if the number of name elements exceeds five.

2. The eligible municipal names include the historic central municipality name and the two component CSDs with the largest population, and having a population of at least 10,000, according to the last census.

3. The ordering of the municipal names within the CMA name is determined by the historic (central) municipality and the population size of the eligible CSDs. The first component of the CMA name is always the historic (central) CSD even if its census population count is less than the other eligible component CSDs. This ensures that CMA names retain a measure of stability for better longitudinal recognition. The second and third place name order is determined by population size. The component CSD with the higher census population count at the time of the name change assumes the second position and the next largest component CSD, the third position.

4. In order for a requested CMA name change to be implemented, there must be explicit consensus among all eligible component municipalities on a proposed new name and a formal request, in accordance with these guidelines, must be sent to the Director of the Geography Division at Statistics Canada by June 1 of the year prior to the census. The CMA name change will be implemented in the revision of the Standard Geographical Classification related to the census under consideration.

5. Statistics Canada will continue to change CMA names whenever the legislated name of a municipality changes. Any other request for a name change will only be considered within the context of these guidelines.

CMA/CA coding structure

Each CMA and CA is assigned a three-digit code that identifies it uniquely in Canada. The first digit is the same as the second digit of the province code in which the CMA or CA is located. If a CMA or CA spans a provincial boundary, then the province code assigned represents the province with the greater proportion of core population. Codes for CAs in Yukon and the Northwest Territories begin with the same digit as for those CMAs or CAs located in British Columbia. There are currently no CMAs or CAs in Nunavut.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMA/CA code</th>
<th>CMA/CA name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>001</td>
<td>St. John's CMA (N.L.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>215</td>
<td>Truro CA (N.S.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>462</td>
<td>Montréal CMA (Que.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>995</td>
<td>Yellowknife CA (N.W.T.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If data for provincial parts are required, it is recommended that the two-digit province/territory (PR) code precede the CMA/CA code for those CMAs/CAs that cross provincial boundaries. For example:
Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations by province and territory.

**Changes to the number of CMAs and CAs for the 2011 Census**

Two CMAs from the previous census had their names changed: Abbotsford became Abbotsford-Mission (B.C.) and Kitchener became Kitchener-Cambridge-Waterloo (Ont.).

Five new CAs were created: Steinbach (Man.), High River (Alta.), Strathmore (Alta.), Sylvan Lake (Alta.) and Lacombe (Alta.).

The CAs of La Tuque (Que.) and Kitimat (B.C.) were retired because the population of their cores dropped below 10,000 in 2006.

**Data quality**

CMAs and CAs are statistically comparable because they are delineated in the same way across Canada. They differ from other areas such as trading or marketing areas, or regional planning areas designated by regional authorities for planning and other purposes, and should be used with caution for non-statistical purposes.

The CSD limits used in CMA and CA delineation are those in effect on January 1, 2011 (the geographic reference date for the 2011 Census) and received by Statistics Canada before March 1, 2011. In addition, CMA and CA delineation uses commuting data based on the place of work question asked in the previous census. Refer to the related definitions of census subdivision (CSD); core, fringe and rural area; population centre (POPCTR) and to the geography working paper Preliminary 2011 Census Metropolitan Area and Census Agglomeration Delineation (Catalogue no. 92F0138MWE2009002).

**Changes prior to the current census:**

**2006** – For 2006, CAs were no longer required to have an urban core population of 100,000 to be promoted to the status of a CMA. Instead, CAs assumed the status of a CMA if they had attained a total population of at least 100,000 of which 50,000 or more lived in the urban core.

– Prior to the 2011 Census, CMA and CA delineation used commuting data based on the place of work question asked in the decennial census. The 2006 CMAs and CAs are based on the population and place of work data from the 2001 Census while the 2001 and 1996 CMAs and CAs are based on population and place of work data from the 1991 Census.

**2001** – For 2001, CAs were required to have an urban core population of at least 100,000 to be changed to the status of a CMA.

– For 2001, consolidated CMAs were no longer defined for dissemination purposes. As a result, primary CMAs and primary CAs were also not defined. However, the consolidation rule was retained and incorporated into the CMA delineation methodology. There was no substantive change to the methodology for defining CMAs and no change to the limits of CMAs resulting from this rule change.

– Prior to 2001, adjacent CMAs and CAs that had sufficient commuting interchange (35% or more) and were merged were identified by the terms 'primary census metropolitan area (PCMA)' and 'primary census agglomeration (PCA)'. The terms 'consolidated census metropolitan area' (CCMA) and 'consolidated census agglomeration' (CCA) described the sum of the component CMAs and CAs. Census data were disseminated for these areas. These terms were not used for the standard dissemination program for 2001.
Six of 27 CMAs were affected significantly as a result of municipal restructuring: Halifax (N.S.), Ottawa – Hull (Ont./Que.), Kingston (Ont.), Greater Sudbury (Ont.), London (Ont.) and Windsor (Ont.).

1996 – Two changes to CMA/CA delineation rules were implemented to preserve data comparability over time. CMAs could be consolidated with CAs, but they could not be consolidated with other CMAs. A primary census agglomeration (PCA) could not be retired from a consolidated CMA or CA (with census tracts at the previous census) even if its total commuting interchange percentage dropped below the consolidation threshold of 35%. Exceptions to this rule could occur due to changes in the physical structure of the urban areas used to determine the urban cores.

Minimum sets of CSDs were used instead of the census consolidated subdivisions (CCSs) for evaluation in the spatial contiguity rule. Refer to the spatial contiguity rule (rule 4).

1986 – Introduction of the consolidated and primary CMA and CA concept.

– The forward commuting threshold was raised from 40% to 50% to control for differences in processing of the place of work data between 1971 and 1981.

– Introduction of the minimum of 100 commuters for forward and reverse commuting for both CMAs and CAs. Single CSD (component) CAs were permitted.

1981 – Commuting data based on the place of work question of the previous decennial census were used for the first time to delineate CAs. For both CMAs and CAs, the forward commuting threshold was 40% and the reverse commuting threshold was 25%.

The minimum urbanized core population for CAs was raised from 2,000 to 10,000.

CAs were eligible for census tracts if they had a CSD with a population of at least 50,000 at the time of the previous census. Single CSD (component) CAs could be created for subdivision into census tracts.

1976 – Commuting data based on the place of work question of the previous decennial census were used for the first time to delineate CMAs. The forward commuting threshold was 40% and the reverse commuting threshold was 25% for the CMAs.

For CAs, see 1971.

1971 – CMAs were defined as main labour market areas, but were delineated according to alternate criteria based on the labour force composition, population growth rate and accessibility. At this time, the CMA of Saint John, N.B. was 'grandfathered'.

CAs were comprised of at least two adjacent municipal entities. These entities had to be at least partly urban and belong to an urbanized core having a population of at least 2,000. The urbanized core included a largest city and a remainder, each with a population of at least 1,000, and had a population density of at least 1,000 per square mile (386 persons per square kilometre).


1961 – CMAs were delineated around cities with a population of at least 50,000, if the population density and labour force composition criteria were met, and the total CMA population was at least 100,000.

CAs were called major urban areas; see 1951.

1956 – See 1951.

1951 – The term 'census metropolitan area' appeared for the first time. This term designated cities of over 50,000 having fringe municipalities in close geographic, economic and social relations, the whole constituting a unit of over 100,000.
The concept of 'major urban areas', the forerunners to CAs, was introduced. The term designated urban areas in which the largest city had a population of at least 25,000 and fewer than 50,000.

1941 — Data were published for 'greater cities', i.e., those cities which have well-defined satellite communities in close economic relationship to them.

Geographic Units: **Census subdivision (CSD)**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Area that is a municipality or an area that is deemed to be equivalent to a municipality for statistical reporting purposes (e.g., as an Indian reserve or an unorganized territory). Municipal status is defined by laws in effect in each province and territory in Canada.

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Census subdivision (CSD) is the general term for municipalities (as determined by provincial/territorial legislation) or areas treated as municipal equivalents for statistical purposes (e.g., Indian reserves, Indian settlements and unorganized territories).


**Remarks:**

**Census subdivision type**

Census subdivisions (CSDs) are classified into 54 types according to official designations adopted by provincial/territorial or federal authorities. Two exceptions are 'subdivision of unorganized' (SNO) in Newfoundland and Labrador, and 'subdivision of county municipality' (SC) in Nova Scotia, which are geographic areas created as equivalents for municipalities by Statistics Canada, in cooperation with those provinces, for the purpose of disseminating statistical data.

The census subdivision type accompanies the census subdivision name in order to distinguish CSDs from each other, for example, Balmoral, VL (for the village of Balmoral) and Balmoral, P (for the parish / paroisse (municipalité de) of Balmoral).

Changes to CSD types for 2011 include the following:

1. CSD types added
   - City / Ville (CV) in Ontario
   - Self-government / Autonomie gouvernementale (SG) in Yukon

2. CSD types deleted
   - Cité (CÉ) was replaced by Ville (V) in Quebec
   - County (municipality) (CM) was corrected to Municipal district (MD) in Alberta
   - Nisga'a village (NVL) has been included in Nisga'a land (NL) in British Columbia

Table 5 shows CSD types, their abbreviated forms, and their distribution by province and territory.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>City / Cité</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC</td>
<td>Chartered community</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CG</td>
<td>Community government</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CN</td>
<td>Crown colony / Colonie de la couronne</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COM</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Canton (municipalité de)</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CU</td>
<td>Cantons unis (municipalité de)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CV</td>
<td>City / Ville</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CY</td>
<td>City</td>
<td>149</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM</td>
<td>District municipality</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAM</td>
<td>Hamlet</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Improvement district</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGD</td>
<td>Indian government district</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IM</td>
<td>Island municipality</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRI</td>
<td>Indian reserve / Réserve indienne</td>
<td>961</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>419</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LGD</td>
<td>Local government district</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOT</td>
<td>Township and royalty</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Municipality / Municipalité</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD</td>
<td>Municipal district</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ME</td>
<td>Municipalité</td>
<td>619</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MU</td>
<td>Municipality</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NH</td>
<td>Northern hamlet</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NL</td>
<td>Nisga’a land</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO</td>
<td>Unorganized / Non organisé</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NV</td>
<td>Northern village</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Parish / Paroisse (municipalité de)</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE</td>
<td>Paroisse (municipalité de)</td>
<td>179</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCR</td>
<td>Rural community / Communauté rurale</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDA</td>
<td>Regional district electoral area</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RG</td>
<td>Region</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGM Regional municipality</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RM Rural municipality</td>
<td>413</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>296</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RV Resort village</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S-É Indian settlement / Établissement indien</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA Special area</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC Subdivision of county municipality / Subdivision municipalité de comté</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE Settlement / Établissement</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET Settlement</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG Self-government / Autonomie gouvernementale</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SM Specialized municipality</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNO Subdivision of unorganized / Subdivision non organisée</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SV Summer village</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T Town</td>
<td>743</td>
<td>277</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC Terres réservées aux Cris</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TI Terre inuite</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TK Terres réservées aux Naskapis</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TL Teslin land</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP Township</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Town / Ville</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V Ville</td>
<td>222</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>222</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VC Village cri</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK Village naskapi</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VL Village</td>
<td>550</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>266</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VN Village nordique</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL</strong></td>
<td><strong>5,253</strong></td>
<td><strong>376</strong></td>
<td><strong>113</strong></td>
<td><strong>99</strong></td>
<td><strong>273</strong></td>
<td><strong>1,285</strong></td>
<td><strong>574</strong></td>
<td><strong>287</strong></td>
<td><strong>959</strong></td>
<td><strong>435</strong></td>
<td><strong>742</strong></td>
<td><strong>37</strong></td>
<td><strong>41</strong></td>
<td><strong>31</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.L. Newfoundland and Labrador
P.E.I. Prince Edward Island
N.S. Nova Scotia
N.B. New Brunswick
Que. Quebec
Ont. Ontario
Man. Manitoba
Sask. Saskatchewan
Alta. Alberta
B.C. British Columbia
Y.T. Yukon Territory
N.W.T. Northwest Territories
Nvt. Nunavut

... not applicable

Census subdivision types associated with 'on reserve' population

On reserve population is a derived census variable that is captured by using the census subdivision (CSD) type according to criteria established by Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development Canada (AANDC; formerly Indian and Northern Affairs Canada [INAC]). On reserve population includes people living in any of the six CSD types legally affiliated with First Nations or Indian bands (described below), as well as the northern village of Sandy Bay in Saskatchewan.

The following census subdivision types are based on the legal definition of communities affiliated with First Nations or Indian bands.

1. Indian reserve (IRI) – A tract of federally owned land with specific boundaries that is set apart for the use and benefit of an Indian band and that is governed by Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development Canada (AANDC). Statistics Canada only recognizes the subset of Indian reserves that are populated (or potentially populated) as census subdivisions. For 2011, of the more than 3,100 Indian reserves across Canada, there are 961 Indian reserves classified as CSDs (including the 6 reserves added for 2011). Statistics Canada works closely with AANDC to identify those reserves to be added as CSDs.

2. Indian settlement (S-É) – A place where a self-contained group of at least 10 Indian (Aboriginal) persons resides more or less permanently. It is usually located on Crown lands under federal or provincial/territorial jurisdiction. Indian settlements have no official limits and have not been set apart for the use and benefit of an Indian band as is the case with Indian reserves. Statistics Canada relies on AANDC to identify Indian settlements to be recognized as census subdivisions, and their inclusion must be with the agreement of the provincial or territorial authorities. An arbitrary boundary is delineated to represent each Indian settlement as a census subdivision. (Exclusions: Champagne Landing 10, Klukshu, Two and One-Half Mile Village, Two Mile Village and Kloo Lake which have CSD type S-É are excluded from this tabulation.)

3. Indian government district (IGD) – Sechelt reserve lands in British Columbia. The Sechelt Indian Band Self-Government Act is a transfer by Her Majesty in right of Canada to the Sechelt Band in all Sechelt reserve lands, recognizing that the Sechelt Band would assume complete responsibility for the management, administration and control of all Sechelt lands. The Sechelt Indian Government District Enabling Act (British Columbia) recognizes the district Council as the governing body of the Sechelt Indian Government District. The district Council may enact laws or by-laws that a municipality has power to enact under an Act of the province.

4. Terres réservées aux Cris (TC) – Parcels of land in Quebec set aside for the permanent residence of Cree First Nations of Quebec. Terres réservées aux Cris are adjacent to villages cris. The area of a village cri is set aside for the use of Cree bands, but members of Cree bands are not permanently residing there. Note that a village cri and its adjacent terre réservée aux Cris can have the same name, e.g., the village cri of Waswanipi and the terre réservée aux Cris of Waswanipi.

5. Terres réservées aux Naskapis (TK) – Parcels of land in Quebec set aside for the permanent residence of Naskapi First Nations of Quebec. Terres réservées aux Naskapis are adjacent to village Naskapi. The lone area of village Naskapi is set aside for the use of the Naskapi band, although its members do not reside there permanently.

6. Nisga’a land (NL) – Part of the territory whose title has been transferred to the Nisga’a Nation by the Final Land Claims Agreement of 1998 between the Nisga’a Nation, the Government of Canada and the Government of British Columbia. Together with the four Nisga’a villages (NVL), this territory makes up the Nisga’a Lands defined by the land claims agreement.

Census subdivision code

The census subdivision (CSD) code is a three-digit code that is based on the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC). In order to uniquely identify each CSD in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code
and the two-digit census division (CD) code must precede the CSD code. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PR-CD-CSD code</th>
<th>CSD name and type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12 06 008</td>
<td>Mahone Bay, T (N.S.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 06 008</td>
<td>Ottawa, CV (Ont.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are two municipalities in Canada that straddle provincial limits: Flin Flon (Manitoba and Saskatchewan) and Lloydminster (Saskatchewan and Alberta). Each of their provincial parts is treated as a separate CSD. Indian reserves are also treated as separate CSDs when they straddle provincial limits.

Changes to census subdivisions for the 2011 Census

The following reserve CSDs were deleted because they are not to be populated.

- Summerside 38 (1214024) in Nova Scotia
- Red Bank 7 (1309025) and St. Mary's 24 (1310035) in New Brunswick
- Whitworth (2412802), Cacouna (2412804) and Coucoucache (2490801) in Quebec
- Naitsicoutaing 17A (3549079), Zhibaahasing 19 (Cockburn Island 19) (3551035), Whitefish River (Part) 4 (3552017), Mountbatten 76A (3552055), New Post 69 (3556104), Missanabie 62 (3557082), Lake Of The Woods 31G (3560062), Wunnumin 2 (3560072), Wapekeka 1 (3560074) and Sachigo Lake 2 (3560087) in Ontario
- Reed River 36A (4601096), Long Plain (Part) 6 (4608039), Cross Lake 19B (4622053), Cross Lake 19C (4622054), Nelson House 17A (4622060), Nelson House 17B (4622061), Nelson House 17C (4622062) and Highrock 199 (4623063) in Manitoba
- Makwa Lake 129A (4717814), Thunderchild First Nation 115D (4717818), Stanley 157A (4718804), Île-à-la-Crosse 192E (4718805), Dipper Rapids 192C (4718816), Primeau Lake 192F (4718830), Turnor Lake 194 (4718837), Clearwater River Dene Band 221 (4718838), Elak Dase 192A (4718843) and Fond du Lac 233 (4718848) in Saskatchewan
- Clearwater 175 (4816823), Devil's Gate 220 (4816825), Chipewyan 201 (4816828), Chipewyan 201B (4816834), Chipewyan 201C (4816837), Chipewyan 201D (4816840), Chipewyan 201E (4816843), Chipewyan 201F (4816845), Chipewyan 201G (4816848), Sandy Point 221 (4816851), Cornwall Lake 224 (4816853) and Collin Lake 223 (4816854) in Alberta
- Bummers Flat 6 (5901807), Aywawwis 15 (5909801), Boothroyd 5A (5909802), Boothroyd 8A (Part) (5909803), Ruby Creek 2 (5909811), Sho-oak 5 (5909813), Chaumoix 11 (5909820), Swahliseah 14 (5909840), Franks 10 (5909846), Samahquam 1 (5909865), Kuthlalth 3 (5909870), Mayne Island 6 (5917806), Pacheena 1 (5917816), Claosse 4 (5919805), Lyacksun 3 (5919810), Wyah 3 (5919819), Openit 27 (5923812), Stuart Bay 6 (5923815), Keeshan 9 (5923821), Nuchatl 1 (5923828), Matsayno 5 (5923825), Saailyooc 6 (5923830), Harwood Island 2 (5927805), Chekwelp 26A (5929802), Schaltuuch 27 (5929804), Seton Lake 5A (5931830), Slish 1A (5931839), Hamilton Creek 7 (5933804), Leon Creek 2 (5933835), Spatsum 11 (5933847), Papyum 27A (5933856), Siska Flat 5A (5933862), Siska Flat 5B (5933863), Staiyahnny 8 (5933869), Cameron Bar 13 (5933890), Andy Cahoose Meadow 16 (5941824), Baezaeko River 25 (5941825), Cahoose 8 (5941826), Baezaeko River 26 (5941836), Tsinun Lake 5 (5941853), Casimiel Meadows 15A (5941857), Kushya Creek 7 (5941867), Quattishe 1 (5943805), Karukwkees 1 (5943810), Apsagayu 1A (5943820), Compton Island 6 (5943824), Mahmalililkullah 1 (5943828), Glen-Gla-Ouch 5 (5943832), Gitzault 24 (5949831), Tsay Cho 4 (5951808), Kuz Che 5 (5951816), Bihl’k’a 18 (5951817), Isaac (Gale Lake) 8 (5951835), Maxan Lake 4 (5951837), Bihl’ka 6 (5951842) and Parsnip 5 (5953804) in British Columbia.

The following reserve and settlement CSDs in British Columbia were combined in order to provide more meaningful statistics.

- Alert Bay 1 (5943801) and Alert Bay 1A (5943802) to Alert Bay (5943837)
- Alexandria 1 (5941815), Alexandria 1A (5941870), Alexandria 3 (5941816) and Alexandria 3A (5941814) to Alexandria (5941882)
- Anahim’s Meadow 2 (5941822) and Anahim’s Meadow 2A (5941823) to Anahim’s Meadow (5941883)
• Chuchriaschin 5 (5933816) and Chuchriaschin 5A (5933822) to Chuchriaschin (5933810)
• Cowichan 1 (5919807) and Cowichan 9 (5919806) to Cowichan (5919822)
• Garden 2 (5941830) and Garden 2A (5941832) to Garden (5941884)
• Halhalaeden 14 (5933818) and Halhalaeden 14A (5933815) to Halhalaeden (5933813)
• Inkluckcheen 21 (5933820) and Inkluckcheen 21B (5933894) to Inkluckcheen (5933833)
• Kanaka Bar 1A (5933826) and Kanaka Bar 2 (5933827) to Kanaka Bar (5933882)
• Little Springs 8 (5941874) and Little Springs 18 (5941875) to Little Springs (5941885)
• Mount Currie 1 (5931803), Mount Currie 2 (5931811), Mount Currie 6 (5931838), Mount Currie 8 (5931837)
  and Mount Currie 10 (5931804) to Mount Currie (5931843)
• Nanaimo River 2 (5921802), Nanaimo River 3 (5921801) and Nanaimo River 4 (5921803) to Nanaimo River (5921807)
• Nequatque 1 (5931805), Nequatque 2 (5931840) and Nequatque 3A (5931810) to Nequatque (5931844)
• Neskonlith 1 (Neskainlith 1) (5933883) and Neskonlith 2 (5933885) to Neskonlith (5933838)
• North Tacla Lake 7 (5951812) and North Tacla Lake 7A (5951841) to North Tacla Lake (5951848)
• Sachteen 2 (5909855) and Sachteen 2A (5909860) to Sachteen (5909883)
• Siska Flat 3 (5933860) and Siska Flat 8 (5933864) to Siska Flat (5933849)
• Skowkale 10 (5909822) and Skowkale 11 (5909823) to Skowkale (5909884)
• Spences Bridge 4 (5933867) and Spences Bridge 4C (5933871) to Spences Bridge (5933881)
• Squiaala 7 (5909828) and Squiaala 8 (5909829) to Squiaala (5909885)
• Switsemalph 6 (5939809) and Switsemalph 7 (5939810) to Switsemalph (5939811)
• Telegraph Creek 6 (5949826) and Telegraph Creek 6A (5949827) to Telegraph Creek (5949847)
• T’Sou-ke 1 (Sooke 1) (5917817) and T’Sou-ke 2 (Sooke 2) (5917818) to T’Sou-ke (5917819)
• Aiyansh (Kitiadamas) 1, NVL (5949836); Gingolx, NVL (5949842); Gitwinksihlkw, NVL (5949838);
  Laxgalts’ap, NVL (5949840) and New Aiyansh, NVL (5949834) to Nisga’a, NL (5949035).

In the Northwest Territories, Inuvik, Unorganized, NO (6107063) and Fort Smith, Unorganized, NO (6106097)
were reorganized into Region 1, Unorganized, NO (6101063); Region 2, Unorganized, NO (6102063); Region 3,
Unorganized, NO (6103097); Region 4, Unorganized, NO (6104097); Region 5, Unorganized, NO (6105097)
and Region 6, Unorganized, NO (6106097).

The boundaries, names, codes and status of census subdivisions reflect those in effect on January 1, 2011, the
gеographic reference date for the 2011 Census of Canada. Information about any CSD changes that were
effective on or before the January 1, 2011 reference date must have been received by Statistics Canada prior to
March 1, 2011, in order to be processed in time for the census.

Refer to the related definition of Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) and to the 2011 Standard
Geographical Classification (SGC), Volume I (Catalogue no. 12-571-X) for summaries of the intercensal census
subdivision changes to codes, names and status.

Changes prior to the current census:

Municipal restructuring between 2001 and 2006 resulted in two noteworthy provinces: Quebec, with 282
dissolutions and 100 incorporations, and Saskatchewan, with 29 dissolutions and 11 incorporations.

The following census subdivisions had their Standard Geographical Classification code revised:

Newfoundland and Labrador: due to the creation of a new census division, Division No. 11, to represent the Inuit
Settlement Area; see related census division definition.

• Rigolet, T – 1010021 to 1011010
• Postville, T – 1010059 to 1011015
• Makkovik, T – 1010044 to 1011020
• Hopedale, T – 1010048 to 1011030
• Nain, T – 1010056 to 1011035
Quebec: primarily due to the dissolutions caused by amalgamations and subsequent reconstitutions of the CSDs (municipalities) listed:

- Charette, MÉ – 2436005 to 2451080
- Saint-Boniface-de-Shawinigan, VL – 2436020 to Saint-Boniface, MÉ – 2451085
- Saint-Élie, PE – 2436010 to Saint-Élie-de-Caxton, MÉ – 2451075
- Saint-Étienne-des-Grès, PE – 2437080 to 2451090
- Saint-Henri, MÉ – 2424005 to 2419068
- Saint-Lambert-de-Lauzon, PE – 2425005 to 2426070
- Saint-Mathieu-du-Parc, MÉ – 2436015 to 2451070
- Waterville, V – 2443005 to 2444080
- Batiscan, MÉ – 2437025 to 2437210
- Champlain, MÉ – 2437030 to 2437220
- Notre-Dame-du-Mont-Carmel, PE – 2436040 to 2437235
- Saint-Luc-de-Vincennes, MÉ – 2437035 to 2437225
- Saint-Maurice, PE – 2437045 to 2437230
- Saint-Narcisse, PE – 2437040 to 2437240
- Saint-Prosper, PE – 2437010 to 2437250
- Saint-Stanislas, MÉ – 2437015 to 2437245
- Sainte-Anne-de-la-Pérade, MÉ – 2437005 to 2437205
- Sainte-Geneviève-de-Batiscan, PE – 2437020 to 2437215
- Petit-Saguenay, MÉ – 2494005 to 2494205
- L’Anse-Saint-Jean, MÉ – 2494010 to 2494210
- Rivière-Éternité, MÉ – 2494015 to 2494215
- Ferland-et-Boilleau, MÉ – 2494020 to 2494220
- Saint-Félix-d’Otis, MÉ – 2494025 to 2494225
- Sainte-Rose-du-Nord, PE – 2494030 to 2494230
- Saint-Fulgence, MÉ – 2494035 to 2494235
- Saint-Honoré, MÉ – 2494060 to 2494240
- Larouche, MÉ – 2494080 to 2494265
- Saint-Charles-de-Bourget, MÉ – 2494085 to 2494260
- Saint-Ambroise, MÉ – 2494090 to 2494255
- Saint-David-de-Falardeau, MÉ – 2494095 to 2494245
- Bégin, MÉ – 2494100 to 2494250
- Lalemant, NO – 2494902 to 2494926
- Lac-Ministuk, NO – 2494904 to 2494928
- Mont Valin, NO – 2494906 to 2494930

Geographic Units: Census subdivision – previous census

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

’Census subdivision – previous census’ refers to the census subdivisions as of January 1, 2006, the geographic reference date for the 2006 Census. A ‘best fit’ linkage is established between dissemination blocks for the 2011 Census and census subdivisions (municipalities) for the 2006 Census. This linkage ensures that data from the current census can be tabulated for the census subdivisions from the previous census.

Remarks:

The boundaries and names of census subdivisions (municipalities) can change from one census to the next because of annexations, dissolutions and incorporations. These changes can result in fewer, larger census subdivisions and historical data analyses becoming more complex. The concept of “census subdivision – previous census” was established to provide a means of tabulating current census data according to census subdivisions as they were delineated for the previous census.

Census data are tabulated for standard geographic areas by aggregating the data for individual dissemination blocks. Dissemination blocks respect the boundaries of census subdivisions for the current census (2011 Census) but do not necessarily respect the boundaries of census subdivisions for the previous census (2006 Census). In order to facilitate the tabulation of 2011 Census data for the census subdivisions (CSDs) as they existed for the 2006 Census, the 2011 dissemination block representative points are overlaid onto the previous census CSD boundaries. The goal is to ensure that at least one dissemination block is linked to each previous census CSD. In a few cases, there is not an exact match—that is, some dissemination blocks straddle two or more CSDs from the previous census, but can only be linked to one CSD. For these cases, a 'best fit' approach is used to ensure that the representative point for at least one dissemination block is linked to every previous census CSD. Thus, reasonably accurate tabulations of 2011 Census data can be produced for the census subdivisions as of January 1, 2006, the geographic reference date for the 2006 Census.

Refer to the related definitions of census subdivision (CSD); dissemination block (DB); geographic reference date and representative point.

Changes prior to the current census:

Not applicable

Geographic Units: Census tract (CT)

Part A – Short definition:

Area that is small and relatively stable. Census tracts usually have a population between 2,500 and 8,000 persons. They are located in census metropolitan areas and in census agglomerations that have a core population of 50,000 or more.

Part B – Detailed definition:

Census tracts (CTs) are small, relatively stable geographic areas that usually have a population between 2,500 and 8,000 persons. They are located in census metropolitan areas and in census agglomerations that had a core population of 50,000 or more in the previous census.

A committee of local specialists (for example, planners, health and social workers, and educators) initially delineates census tracts in conjunction with Statistics Canada. Once a census metropolitan area (CMA) or census agglomeration (CA) has been subdivided into census tracts, the census tracts are maintained even if the core population subsequently declines below 50,000.

Remarks:

Rules are used to delineate census tracts. The initial delineation rules are ranked in the order of the following priorities:

1. Census tract (CT) boundaries must follow permanent and easily recognizable physical features. However, street extensions, utility or transportation easements, property lines and municipal limits may be used as CT boundaries if physical features are not in close proximity or do not exist.

2. The population of a CT should range between 2,500 and 8,000, with a preferred average of 4,000. CTs in the central business district, major commercial and industrial zones, or peripheral areas can have populations outside this range.

3. The CT should be as homogeneous as possible in terms of socioeconomic characteristics, such as similar economic status and social living conditions at the time of its creation.

4. The CT’s shape should be as compact as possible.

5. CT boundaries respect census metropolitan area, census agglomeration and provincial boundaries. However, CT boundaries do not necessarily respect census subdivision (municipality) boundaries.

A complete set of delineation rules and operational procedures for census tracts are available upon request from the Geography Division, Statistics Canada.

Changes to census tract boundaries are discouraged in order to maintain maximum data comparability between censuses. Boundary revisions rarely occur, and only when essential. Road construction, railroad abandonment, community redevelopment, neighbourhood growth and municipal annexations may contribute to changes in census tract boundaries. A census tract may be split into two or more new census tracts (usually when its population exceeds 8,000). CT splits are usually done in a way that allows users to re-aggregate the splits to the original census tract for historical comparison.

The minimum population of 2,500 allows for statistically significant data tabulations. The maximum population of 8,000 facilitates delineation and retention of relatively homogeneous and useful tracts. The population range and average also permit data comparability among census tracts.

Naming convention for census tracts

Each census tract is assigned a seven-character numeric ‘name’ (including leading zeros, the decimal point and trailing zeros). To uniquely identify each census tract in its corresponding census metropolitan area (CMA) or tracted census agglomeration (CA), the three-digit CMA/CA code must precede the CT ‘name’. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMA/CA code – CT name</th>
<th>CMA/CA name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>562 0005.00</td>
<td>Sarnia CA (Ont.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>933 0005.00</td>
<td>Vancouver CMA (B.C.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Census tract naming is consistent from census to census to facilitate historical comparability.

When a CA enters the census tract program, the census subdivision (CSD) that gives the CA its name is assigned the first CT ‘name’, starting at 0001.00. When all of the CTs within the first CSD are named, then the CTs of the adjoining CSDs are named, and finally those on the periphery are named.

If a census tract is split into two or more parts due to a population increase, the number after the decimal point identifies the splits. For example, CT 0042.00 becomes CT 0042.01 and CT 0042.02. If CT 0042.01 is subsequently split, it becomes CT 0042.03 and CT 0042.04. Similarly, if CT 0042.02 is split after CT 0042.01, it
becomes CT 0042.05 and CT 0042.06. Any splits occurring after this would be numbered in a similar fashion, with the next sequential number. This allows users to re-aggregate the splits to the original census tract.

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of census tracts by province and territory.

A conversion table showing the relationship between the current and previous census tracts for each tracted centre is available upon request from the Geography Division, Statistics Canada.

The nature of the census tract concept, along with the availability of a wide range of census data, makes census tracts useful in many applications. These include:

- municipal and regional planning and research, such as the development, evaluation and revision of official plans
- educational and research studies in high schools, community colleges and universities
- market research, such as identifying areas of opportunity and evaluating market or service potential for housing, health, educational, recreational or retailing facilities.

Census tracts should be used with caution for non-statistical purposes.

Refer to the related definition of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA).

Changes prior to the current census:

Beginning in 1996, census agglomerations were eligible for census tracts based on the population size of their urban cores (50,000 or more at the previous census). This was a change from previous censuses, when census agglomerations had to contain a municipality (census subdivision) with a population of 50,000 or more at the previous census to be eligible for census tracts.

From 1971 to 1991, a provincial census tract program existed. Provincial census tracts were similar in concept to census tracts, but covered areas outside census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations. Taken together, census tracts and provincial census tracts covered all of Canada.

In 1941 and 1946, census tracts were called 'social areas.'

Geographic Units: Core, fringe and rural area

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable.

Part B – Detailed definition:

The terms 'core,' 'fringe' and 'rural area' replace the terms 'urban core,' 'urban fringe' and 'rural fringe' for the 2011 Census. These terms distinguish between population centres (POPCTRs) and rural areas (RAs) within a census metropolitan area (CMA) or census agglomeration (CA).

A CMA or CA can have two types of cores: the core and the secondary core. The core is the population centre with the highest population, around which a CMA or a CA is delineated. The core must have a population (based on the previous census) of at least 50,000 persons in the case of a CMA, or at least 10,000 persons in the case of a CA.

The secondary core is a population centre within a CMA that has at least 10,000 persons and was the core of a CA that has been merged with an adjacent CMA.
The term ‘fringe’ includes all population centres within a CMA or CA that have less than 10,000 persons and are not contiguous with the core or secondary core.

All territory within a CMA or CA that is not classified as a core or fringe is classified as rural area.

**Censuses:** 2011

**Remarks:**

While every CMA and CA has a core, it may or may not have a secondary core, a fringe or a rural area. See Figure 12.

**Figure 12 Example of a census metropolitan area or census agglomeration, showing core, secondary core, fringe and rural area**


Population counts for population centres are published according to the class of population centre, regardless of whether they are inside or outside of a CMA or CA. Population centres are classified into one of three groups, depending on the size of their population:

- small population centres, with a population between 1,000 and 29,999
- medium population centres, with a population between 30,000 and 99,999
- large urban population centres, with a population of 100,000 or more.

Refer to related definitions of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); population centre (POPCTR) and rural area (RA).

**Changes prior to the current census:**

Prior to 2011, the terms 'urban core,' 'secondary urban core,' 'urban fringe' and 'rural fringe' were used.

Beginning in 2001, the concept of the secondary urban core was used to describe the urban core of a CA that merged with an adjacent CMA.

Beginning in 1996, the term 'urban core' replaced the term 'urbanized core.' The term 'urbanized core' was used from 1971 to 1991.
Prior to 1996, this concept was known as CMA/CA parts.

Beginning in 1986, primary CMAs (PCMAs) and primary CAs (PCAs) were delineated within some CMAs and CAs. Because of this change, some urban areas that were urban fringes of 1981 CMAs or CAs became urban cores of 1986 PCMAs or PCAs.

For 1976 and 1971, the urbanized core was further broken down into the 'largest city' and 'remainder.'

For 1966 and 1961, the urban part of the CMA was divided into the 'metropolitan area – urban' (continuous built-up area) and the 'metropolitan area – outside urban' (non-continuous built-up area); the remaining rural part was known as 'metropolitan area – rural.'

**Geographic Units: Designated place (DPL)**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Usually a small community that does not meet the criteria used to define municipalities or population centres (areas with a population of at least 1,000 and no fewer than 400 persons per square kilometre). Designated places are created by provinces and territories in cooperation with Statistics Canada.

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

A designated place (DPL) is normally a small community or settlement that does not meet the criteria established by Statistics Canada to be a census subdivision (an area with municipal status) or a population centre.

Designated places are created by provinces and territories, in cooperation with Statistics Canada, to provide data for submunicipal areas.

**Censuses:** 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996

**Remarks:**

The criteria that small communities or settlements must meet in order to become a designated place (DPL) include:

- an area less than or equal to 10 square kilometres
- a boundary that respects the block structure from the previous census, where possible
- an area that does not overlap the area of a population centre.

For 2011, the term 'population centre' (POPCTR) replaces the term 'urban area' (UA).

Those 2006 urban areas which no longer meet the criteria to be included in the 2011 population centre program will be considered for inclusion in the designated place program for 2011. Furthermore, designated places will not be permitted to overlap population centres.

For 2011, the DPL of Cowichan 1 (DPL 59 0321) in British Columbia overlaps the POPCTR of Duncan (POPCTR 0243). In an effort to minimize data suppression for this area, this DPL represents a formerly discontiguous Aboriginal community which has been combined to form a single discontiguous census subdivision (CSD).

Designated places are no longer required to respect census subdivision boundaries. Where a designated place straddles one or more census subdivision limits, DPL parts will be created. The areas recognized as designated places may not represent all places having the same status within a province or territory.
Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of designated places by province and territory.

Table 6 shows the types of designated places, their abbreviated forms and their distribution by province and territory.

### Table 6 Designated place types by province and territory, 2011 Census

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Designated place type</th>
<th>Province/territory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CFA Class IV area</td>
<td>Nova Scotia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMU Dissolved municipality</td>
<td>Ontario, Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPL Designated place</td>
<td>Newfoundland and Labrador</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRI Indian reserve / Réserve indienne</td>
<td>British Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IST Island trust</td>
<td>British Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNC Localité non constituée</td>
<td>Quebec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSB Local service board</td>
<td>Ontario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSD Local service district</td>
<td>New Brunswick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUD Local urban district</td>
<td>Manitoba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDI Municipalité dissoute</td>
<td>Quebec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDP Municipal defined places</td>
<td>Ontario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MET Métis settlement</td>
<td>Alberta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCM Northern community</td>
<td>Manitoba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NVL Nisga’a village</td>
<td>British Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OHM Organized hamlet</td>
<td>Saskatchewan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE Aboriginal settlement</td>
<td>Yukon Territory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNP Unincorporated place</td>
<td>Alberta, British Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UUC Unincorporated urban centre</td>
<td>Manitoba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. There are no designated places for Prince Edward Island, the Northwest Territories and Nunavut for the 2011 Census.


Each designated place is assigned a four-digit code. In order to uniquely identify each DPL in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code must precede the DPL code. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PR code</th>
<th>DPL code</th>
<th>DPL name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>0085</td>
<td>Masstown (N.S.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>0085</td>
<td>Saint-Pons (N.B.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>0085</td>
<td>McGregor Bay part B (Ont.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Refer to the related definitions of census subdivision (CSD); place name (PN); population centre (POPCTR) and rural area (RA).
Changes prior to the current census:

In 2006, the criteria that small communities were required to respect in order to become a DPL included:

- a minimum population of 100 and a maximum population of 1,000. The maximum population limit may have been exceeded provided that the population density was less than 400 persons per square kilometre, which was the population density that defined an urban area
- a population density of 150 persons or more per square kilometre
- an area less than or equal to 10 square kilometres
- a boundary that respected the block structure from the previous census, where possible
- a boundary that respected census subdivision (CSD) limits.

The final two criteria were new for 2006, the last of which was established to eliminate the need to maintain DPL parts. To ensure that DPLs created in 2001 or earlier respected 2006 CSD boundaries, DPLs straddling CSD boundaries were split to create independent DPLs. To maintain historical comparability and ease the transition into this new criteria, each new independent DPL kept its existing name, with 'part' added to it, such as part A, part B, and was assigned its own unique code.

In 2001 and earlier, designated places were not required to respect census subdivision (CSD) boundaries. As a result, a number of DPLs straddled two or more CSDs. To identify these DPLs and the CSDs that they straddled, the seven-digit SGC code (PR-CD-CSD) had to precede the DPL code. The DPL part flag identified the number of parts the DPL is divided into as a result of straddling CSDs.

In 1996, Statistics Canada introduced the concept of designated places as a new geographic unit for data dissemination to respond to the increasing demand for population counts and census data according to 'submunicipal' or unincorporated areas. The concept generally applied to small communities for which there may have been some level of legislation, but they fell below the criteria established for municipal status.

Between 1981 and 1991, Statistics Canada had facilitated the retrieval of census data by delineating these submunicipal areas at the enumeration area level only. The number of areas delineated expanded from fewer than 50 northern communities in Manitoba in 1981, to more than 800 areas across Canada by 1996.

Geographic Units: Dissemination area (DA)

Part A – Short definition:

Small area composed of one or more neighbouring dissemination blocks, with a population of 400 to 700 persons. All of Canada is divided into dissemination areas.

Part B – Detailed definition:

A dissemination area (DA) is a small, relatively stable geographic unit composed of one or more adjacent dissemination blocks. It is the smallest standard geographic area for which all census data are disseminated. DAs cover all the territory of Canada.

Remarks:

For 2011, dissemination areas (DAs) were defined as needed, rather than being completely re-delineated. This was to help ensure the comparability of data since the previous census. To do this, planners located in areas with census tracts were surveyed for their input regarding the delineation of DAs that experienced high population growth between the 2001 and 2006 Censuses or that exceeded the DA maximum population limit. Other user-defined DA updates were accepted in areas where the DA structure either changed substantially between 2001 and 2006 as a result of automated delineation or simply did not provide users (local area experts) with relevant data since the DAs were not representative of their communities. The implementation of both of these types of user-defined updates eliminated the requirement for a fully automated delineation, which was used in previous censuses.

Dissemination area rules

Dissemination areas respect several delineation criteria designed to maximize their usefulness for data analysis and to meet operational constraints.

1. Dissemination area (DA) boundaries respect the boundaries of census subdivisions and census tracts. DAs therefore remain stable over time, to the extent that census subdivisions and census tracts do.

2. Dissemination area boundaries follow roads. DA boundaries may follow other features (such as railways, water features, power transmission lines), where these features form part of the boundaries of census subdivisions or census tracts.

3. Dissemination areas are uniform in terms of population size, which is targeted from 400 to 700 persons to avoid data suppression. DAs with lower population counts (including zero population) may result in order to respect the boundaries of census subdivisions and census tracts. DAs with higher population counts may also result.

4. Dissemination areas are delineated based on the block population counts from the previous census due to operational constraints.

5. Dissemination areas are compact in shape, to the extent possible while respecting the above criteria.

6. The number of dissemination blocks that are included in a dissemination area is limited to 99 due to operational constraints.

Dissemination area codes

Each dissemination area (DA) is assigned a four-digit code. In order to uniquely identify each DA in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code and the two-digit CD code must precede the DA code. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PR-CD-DA code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 12 09 0103    | Province 12: Nova Scotia  
CD 09: Halifax  
DA 0103        |
| 59 09 0103    | Province 59: British Columbia  
CD 09: Fraser Valley  
DA 0103        |

When dissemination areas were first created, geographic proximity was embedded in the DA code by assigning DA codes in a serpentine manner within each census division. As DAs evolve, this coding structure cannot be maintained. Therefore, DA codes can no longer ensure geographic proximity.

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of dissemination areas by province and territory.

Refer to the related definitions of census subdivision (CSD); census tract (CT) and dissemination block (DB).
Changes prior to the current census:

In 2006, dissemination areas (DAs) were delineated outside of census metropolitan areas (CMAs) and census agglomerations (CAs) using an automated area delineation system. Within CMAs and CAs that contained census tracts (CTs), DAs were kept relatively stable since the previous census. Some DAs in these areas were adjusted to respect changes to CT, CA, and CMA boundaries.

In 2001, the DA was a new standard geographic area. It replaced the enumeration area (EA) as a basic unit for dissemination. The 1996 population counts were used to delineate the DAs, mainly in block-face geocoding areas of CMAs and those CAs that contained CTs. Everywhere else, the 2001 DAs were the same as the 2001 EAs used for data collection.

Geographic Units: Dissemination block (DB)

Part A – Short definition:

Area equivalent to a city block bounded by intersecting streets. These areas cover all of Canada.

Part B – Detailed definition:

A dissemination block (DB) is an area bounded on all sides by roads and/or boundaries of standard geographic areas. The dissemination block is the smallest geographic area for which population and dwelling counts are disseminated. Dissemination blocks cover all the territory of Canada.

Censuses: 2011, 2006 (dissemination block)
2001 (block)

Remarks:

Dissemination blocks are primarily an artefact of the road network. As such, the number of DBs created is a function of the timeliness and accuracy of the road network prior to the census. It is not possible to have a road network reflecting exactly the situation on Census Day. For the 2011 Census, the road network used for DB creation is up-to-date as of fall 2010.

Highway medians, ramp areas and other irregular polygons may form dissemination blocks on their own. A morphological dissemination block is split to form two or more DBs wherever it is traversed by the boundaries of selected standard geographic areas, namely federal electoral districts (FEDs), census subdivisions (CSDs), census tracts (CTs), designated places (DPLs) or dissemination areas (DAs). This makes it possible to aggregate dissemination block data to all standard geographic areas.

In rural areas where the road network is sparse or even non-existent, the boundaries of collection units are used to avoid creating very large dissemination blocks.

Each dissemination block is assigned a two-digit code. In order to uniquely identify each dissemination block in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code, the two-digit census division (CD) code and the four-digit dissemination area (DA) code must precede the DB code. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PR-CD-DA-DB code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12 09 0103 02</td>
<td>Nova Scotia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Halifax</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Only population and dwelling counts are disseminated at the dissemination block level (with the dissemination area being the smallest standard geographic area for which characteristic data are disseminated). To ensure confidentiality, population counts are adjusted for dissemination blocks having a population of less than 15.

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of dissemination blocks by province and territory.

Refer to the related definitions of census division (CD); census subdivision (CSD); census tract (CT); designated place (DPL); dissemination area (DA); federal electoral district (FED) and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Changes prior to the current census:

In 2006, the term 'dissemination block' replaced the term 'block.'

In 2001, the term 'block' was used.

Prior to 2001, households and their associated population and dwelling counts were geographically referenced to the enumeration area at the time of collection. For more information, refer to the geography working paper Introducing the Dissemination Area for the 2001 Census: An Update (Catalogue no. 92F0138MIE2000004).

Geographic Units: Economic region (ER)

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

An economic region (ER) is a grouping of complete census divisions (CDs) (with one exception in Ontario) created as a standard geographic unit for analysis of regional economic activity.


Remarks:

Within the province of Quebec, economic regions (régions administratives) are designated by law. In all other provinces and territories, economic regions (ERs) are created by agreement between Statistics Canada and the province/territory concerned. Prince Edward Island and the three territories each consist of one ER. In Ontario, there is one exception where the ER boundary does not respect census division boundaries: the census division of Halton is split between the ER of Hamilton--Niagara Peninsula and the ER of Toronto.

Each economic region is assigned a two-digit code. In order to uniquely identify each ER in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code must precede the two-digit ER code. For example:
Changes to economic regions for the 2011 Census

In New Brunswick, the boundary between Campbellton--Miramichi (ER 13 10) and Fredericton--Oromocto (ER 13 40) was affected because part of Stanley, P (CSD 13 10 036) was taken from York (CD 13 10) and annexed to Upper Miramichi, RCR (CSD 13 09 027) in Northumberland (CD 13 09).

In Ontario, the boundary between London (ER 35 60) and Stratford--Bruce Peninsula (ER 35 80) was affected because part of Perth East, TP (CSD 35 31 030) was taken from Perth (CD 35 31) and annexed to East Zorra-Tavistock, TP (CSD 35 32 038) in Oxford (CD 35 32).

In Alberta, the boundary between Edmonton (ER 48 60) and Banff--Jasper--Rocky Mountain House (ER 48 40) was affected because part of Yellowhead County, MD (48 14 003) was taken from Division No. 14 (CD 48 14) and annexed to Brazeau County, MD (CSD 48 11 032) in Division No. 11 (CD 48 11).

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of economic regions by province and territory.

Refer to the related definitions of census division (CD); census subdivision (CSD) and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes prior to the current census:

In 2006, the composition of West Coast--Northern Peninsula--Labrador (ER 10 30) in Newfoundland and Labrador changed due to the creation of the new census division, Division No. 11 (CD 10 11). In Quebec, the composition of Chaudière-Appalaches (ER 24 25) changed due to the dissolution of the CD of Desjardins (CD 24 24). In Manitoba, the boundary between Southwest (ER 46 30) and Parklands (ER 46 70) changed due to a CSD boundary change. Finally, in British Columbia, the composition of Lower Mainland--Southwest (ER 59 20) and Thompson--Okanagan (ER 59 30) were affected by CSD changes that did not, however, result in a boundary change.

For 2001, the province of Quebec increased the number of economic regions from 16 to 17. The boundary between Centre-du-Québec (ER 24 33) and Estrie (ER 24 30) was modified because of a CSD change. Also, the name of the région administrative of Québec (ER 24 20) was changed to Capitale-Nationale (ER 24 20). In Ontario, the boundary between Muskoka--Kawartha (ER 35 20) and Kingston--Pembroke (ER 35 15) was modified because of CSD changes.

In Alberta, five economic regions were affected by boundary and name changes of census divisions. Boundary changes included moving CD 48 09 from ER 48 50 to ER 48 40, moving CD 48 10 from ER 48 80 to ER 48 20, and moving CD 48 13 from ER 48 40 to ER 48 70. The name changes included Camrose – Drumheller (ER 48 20), Banff - Jasper - Rocky Mountain House (ER 48 40), Red Deer (ER 48 50), Athabasca - Grande Prairie - Peace River (ER 48 70), and Wood Buffalo - Cold Lake (ER 48 80).

Geographic Units: Federal electoral district (FED)

Part A – Short definition:

Area represented by a Member of Parliament (MP) elected to the House of Commons.
Part B – Detailed definition:

A federal electoral district (FED) is an area represented by a member of the House of Commons. The federal electoral district boundaries used for the 2011 Census are based on the 2003 Representation Order.


Remarks:

Following the release of population counts from each decennial census, the Chief Electoral Officer determines the number of seats in the House of Commons and publishes the information in the Canada Gazette. Electoral boundaries commissions then determine the adjustments to the constituency boundaries. Based on reports from these commissions, the Chief Electoral Officer prepares a representation order (RO) that describes the boundaries and specifies the name and the population of each federal electoral district (FED). The representation order is in force on the first dissolution of Parliament that occurs at least one year after its proclamation. The 2003 Representation Order (proclaimed on August 25, 2003) was based on 2001 Census population counts, and increased the number of FEDs to 308, up from 301 for the previous 1996 Representation Order. Ontario received three additional seats, while Alberta and British Columbia each gained two seats. The names of FEDs may change at any time through an Act of Parliament.

The FED boundaries and names used for the 2011 Census reflect those in effect on January 1, 2011 (the geographic reference date for the 2011 Census of Canada).

Each federal electoral district is assigned a three-digit code. In order to uniquely identify each FED in Canada, the two-digit province/territory code (PR) must precede the FED code. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PR-FED code</th>
<th>FED name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>46 009</td>
<td>Saint Boniface (Man.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59 009</td>
<td>Fleetwood – Port Kells (B.C.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of federal electoral districts (2003 Representation Order) by province and territory.

Changes prior to the current census:

The 2006 Census was taken according to the 2003 Representation Order.

The 2001 Census was taken according to the 1996 Representation Order.

The 1996 and 1991 Censuses were taken according to the 1987 Representation Order.

The 1986 and 1981 Censuses were taken according to the 1976 Representation Order.

The 1976 and 1971 Censuses were taken according to the 1966 Representation Order.

The 1966 and 1961 Censuses were taken according to the 1952 Representation Order.

Geographic Units: Geographical region of Canada

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable
Part B – Detailed definition:

The geographical regions of Canada are groupings of provinces and territories established for the purpose of statistical reporting. The six geographical regions of Canada are:

- Atlantic
- Quebec
- Ontario
- Prairies
- British Columbia
- Territories

Census: 2011

Remarks:
Refer to the related definition of Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes prior to the current census:
Not applicable.

Geographic Units: Locality (LOC)

Part A – Short definition:

The term 'locality' (LOC) is discontinued for the 2011 Census. Refer to the definition of 'place name' (PN).

Geographic Units: Place name (PN)

Part A – Short definition:
Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

'Place name' refers to selected names of active and retired geographic areas as well as names from the Canadian Geographical Names Data Base. Place names include names of census subdivisions (municipalities), designated places and population centres, as well as the names of some local places.


Remarks:

The term 'place name' replaces the term 'locality' for the 2011 Census.
The purpose is to provide users with a means for searching and mapping on 'localized' place names.
Place name data keeps evolving and may not be comparable between censuses.

Refer to the related definitions of census subdivision (CSD); designated place (DPL) and population centre (POPCTR).

Changes prior to the current census:

Prior to 2011, the term 'locality' was used to describe historical place names, such as former census subdivisions (municipalities), designated places and urban areas. However, the locality and place name concepts were not identical.

Prior to 2001, localities did not exist.

Prior to 1996, designated places did not exist.

Geographic Units: Population centre (POPCTR)

Part A – Short definition:

Area with a population of at least 1,000 and no fewer than 400 persons per square kilometre. The term 'population centre' (POPCTR) replaces the term 'urban area' (UA).

Population centres are classified into three groups, depending on the size of their population:

• small population centres, with a population between 1,000 and 29,999
• medium population centres, with a population between 30,000 and 99,999
• large urban population centres, with a population of 100,000 or more.

Part B – Detailed definition:

A population centre (POPCTR) has a population of at least 1,000 and a population density of 400 persons or more per square kilometre, based on the current census population count. All areas outside population centres are classified as rural areas.

Taken together, population centres and rural areas cover all of Canada.

Population centres are classified into three groups, depending on the size of their population:

• small population centres, with a population between 1,000 and 29,999
• medium population centres, with a population between 30,000 and 99,999
• large urban population centres, with a population of 100,000 or more.

Population centre population includes all population living in the cores, secondary cores and fringes of census metropolitan areas (CMAs) and census agglomerations (CAs), as well as the population living in population centres outside CMAs and CAs.

Census: 2011

Remarks:

Starting with the 2011 Census, the term 'population centre' replaces the term 'urban area.'

Prior to 2011, urban areas included a wide range of densely-populated areas, from small centres with a population of 1,000 to very large centres of more than 1 million. This approach ignored size differences by treating all urban areas as a single group. Given the widely accepted view that a more dynamic urban-rural continuum exists, the use of the term 'urban area' could lead to misinterpretations.
Population centres are divided into three groups based on the size of their population to reflect the existence of an urban-rural continuum.

**Table 7 Distribution of population by size of population centre, 2001 and 2006 censuses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Population centre classification and rural area</th>
<th>Number of population centres</th>
<th>Population</th>
<th>change in population 2001 to 2006</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural area</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>6,098,883</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small population centre (1,000 to 29,999)</td>
<td>836</td>
<td>812</td>
<td>3,949,780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium population centre (30,000 to 99,999)</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>2,448,150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large urban population centre (100,000 or greater)</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>17,510,281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>913</td>
<td>895</td>
<td>30,007,094</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

... not applicable

Source: Statistics Canada, 2011 Census of Population

The delineation rules for population centres (POPCTR) are ranked in order of priority:

1. The 2006 urban areas are retained as 2011 population centres if their current population is 1,000 or more.
2. If a dissemination block with a population density of at least 400 persons per square kilometre is adjacent to a population centre, then it is added to that population centre.
3. If a dissemination block or group of contiguous dissemination blocks, each having a minimum population of 1,000 and a population density of at least 400 persons per square kilometre for the current census, then the dissemination block or group of contiguous dissemination blocks is delineated as a new population centre.
4. The distance by road between population centres is measured. If the distance is less than two kilometres, then the population centres are combined to form a single population centre, provided they do not cross census metropolitan area (CMA) or census agglomeration (CA) boundaries.
5. If a population centre is contained within a census subdivision (CSD) or a designated place (DPL), the difference in land area between the population centre and the CSD or DPL is calculated. For confidentiality purposes, if the difference between the CSD and the population centre is less than 10 square kilometres, then the boundary for the population centre is adjusted to the CSD boundary. However, if the difference between the DPL and the population centre is less than 10 square kilometres and the remaining population is less than 100, then the population centre will annex the entire DPL.

The resulting population centres are reviewed and may be modified to ensure spatial contiguity where appropriate (for example, the removal of interior holes).

Some population centres may contain commercial and industrial districts, railway yards, airports, parks and other uninhabited areas that result in dissemination blocks with population densities of less than 400 persons per square kilometre. In general, the impact on the total population within population centres is minor, but the impact on specific land areas could be significant. This would affect any programs or research based on precise distance or land area measurements related to individual population centres.
Once a population centre attains a population of 10,000 persons, it is eligible to become the core of a census agglomeration (CA). Once a population centre attains a population of 50,000 and is the core of a census agglomeration with a minimum total population of 100,000, then it is eligible to become the core of a census metropolitan area (CMA). When a population centre with a population of at least 50,000 persons is also the core of a census agglomeration, the census agglomeration is eligible for the census tract program.

**Naming convention**

The name of the population centre is the name of the principal census subdivision (CSD) when the CSD is (or was) a city, town or village. If two or more principal CSDs are involved, the population centre may be given a compound name. In other cases, the name of the population centre is an appropriate place name.

**Geographic code**

Population centre codes are unique four-digit codes that are assigned sequentially upon the POPCTR creation. These codes remain constant between censuses. The previous 2006 urban area codes are retained for the 2011 population centres. If a population centre is retired due to amalgamation or failure to meet the population or density thresholds, then its code is retired.

It is recommended that the two-digit province/territory (PR) code precede the POPCTR code in order to identify each POPCTR uniquely within its corresponding province/territory. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PR-POPCTR code</th>
<th>POPCTR name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11 0159</td>
<td>Charlottetown (P.E.I.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 0122</td>
<td>Campbellton (N.B.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 0122</td>
<td>Campbellton (Que.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46 0282</td>
<td>Flin Flon (Man.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47 0282</td>
<td>Flin Flon (Sask.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 1023</td>
<td>Whitehorse (Y.T.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Five POPCTRs straddle provincial boundaries: Campbellton (New Brunswick and Quebec), Hawkesbury (Ontario and Quebec), Ottawa - Gatineau (Ontario and Quebec), Flin Flon (Manitoba and Saskatchewan) and Lloydminster (Alberta and Saskatchewan).

For 2011, the DPL of Cowichan 1 (DPL 59 0321) in British Columbia overlaps the POPCTR of Duncan (POPCTR 0243). In an effort to minimize data suppression for this area, this DPL represents a formerly disconnected Aboriginal community which has been combined to form a single disconnected census subdivision (CSD).

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of population centres by province and territory.

Refer to the related definitions of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); census subdivision (CSD); core, fringe and rural area; designated place (DPL); dissemination block (DB); land area; place name (PN) and population density.

**Changes prior to the current census:**

The term 'urban area' existed at Statistics Canada from the 1961 to 2006 censuses.

For 2006, the boundaries of 412 urban areas for 2001 were adjusted to correct for over-bounding which largely resulted from the 2001 block structure. This correction resulted in the reduction of land area of these 2001 urban areas in preparation for the delineation of the 2006 urban areas. The correction also resulted in the reinstatement of four urban areas for 2006 which had been merged with other urban areas in 2001: Fortune (10 0300), Sainte-Croix (24 0878), Châteauguay (24 1177) and Dowling (35 1084).

One of the 2006 urban areas, Attawapiskat 91A (UA 35 1275), was an area that had been identified as being
an incompletely enumerated Indian reserve. Data for 2006 were not available for the incompletely enumerated reserves and settlements, and were not included in tabulations. Because of the missing data, users were cautioned that for the affected geographic areas, comparisons (e.g., percentage change) between 2001 and 2006 were not exact.

In 2001, the delineation of urban areas became an automated process that made it possible to use population counts and population density data from the current census.

Prior to 2001, the geographic units used for urban area delineation were census subdivisions, designated places and enumeration areas. Population counts and population density from the previous census were used in all cases, except when enumeration area boundaries had been adjusted for the current census.

For 1976, urban areas contained a population concentration of at least 1,000 persons and a population density of at least 1,000 persons per square mile (386 per square kilometre). Urban areas were combined if they were separated by less than one mile (1.6 kilometres).

For 1971, 1966 and 1961, urban areas included:

- all incorporated cities, towns and villages with a population of 1,000 persons or over;
- all unincorporated places with a population of 1,000 persons or over and a population density of at least 1,000 persons per square mile; and
- the urbanized fringe and the urbanized core of a census agglomeration or census metropolitan area, that had a minimum population of 1,000 persons and a density of at least 1,000 persons per square mile.

**Geographic Units: Province or territory**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Portion of Canada’s land area governed by a political authority. Canada is divided into 10 provinces and 3 territories.

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

‘Province’ and ‘territory’ refer to the major political units of Canada. From a statistical point of view, province and territory are basic areas for which data are tabulated. Canada is divided into 10 provinces and 3 territories.


**Remarks:**

Statistics Canada uses standard codes and abbreviations to represent provinces and territories. The two-digit code that uniquely identifies each province/territory is based on the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC). The code is assigned from east to west. The first digit represents the geographical region of Canada in which the province/territory is located and the second digit denotes one of the 10 provinces and 3 territories (Table 8).

Effective October 20, 2008, the names ‘Yukon Territory’ in English and ‘Territoire du Yukon’ in French become ‘Yukon’ in English and in French, as per the Yukon Act (Chapter 7, assented March 27, 2002).

Users should be aware that there is no change to the abbreviations or to the numeric and alpha codes for Yukon. The abbreviations remain Y.T. in English and Yn in French, 60 for the numeric code and YT for the alpha code.
Table 8  Abbreviations and codes for provinces and territories, 2011 Census

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Province/Territory</th>
<th>Standard abbreviations English/French</th>
<th>Internationally approved alpha code (Source: Canada Post)</th>
<th>Standard geographical classification (SGC) code</th>
<th>Region name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Newfoundland and Labrador</td>
<td>N.L./T.-N.-L.</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Atlantic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prince Edward Island</td>
<td>P.E.I./Î.-P.-É.</td>
<td>PE</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Atlantic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nova Scotia</td>
<td>N.S./N.-É.</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Atlantic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Brunswick</td>
<td>N.B./N.-B.</td>
<td>NB</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Atlantic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quebec</td>
<td>Que./Qc</td>
<td>QC</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Quebec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ontario</td>
<td>Ont./Ont.</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Ontario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manitoba</td>
<td>Man./Man.</td>
<td>MB</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>Prairies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saskatchewan</td>
<td>Sask./Sask.</td>
<td>SK</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>Prairies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alberta</td>
<td>Alta./Alb.</td>
<td>AB</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>Prairies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Columbia</td>
<td>B.C./C.-B.</td>
<td>BC</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>British Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yukon</td>
<td>Y.T./Yn</td>
<td>YT</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Territories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northwest Territories</td>
<td>N.W.T./T.N.-O.</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>Territories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nunavut</td>
<td>Nvt./Nt</td>
<td>NU</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>Territories</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Refer to the related definitions of census division (CD) and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes prior to the current census:

On October 21, 2002, the alpha code for the province of Newfoundland and Labrador changed from NF to NL. Furthermore, the official English abbreviation for Newfoundland and Labrador changed from Nfld.Lab. to N.L. The official French abbreviation remains unchanged.

Geographic Units: Rural area (RA)

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

Rural areas (RAs) include all territory lying outside population centres (POPCTRs). Taken together, population centres and rural areas cover all of Canada.

Rural population includes all population living in rural areas of census metropolitan areas (CMAs) and census agglomerations (CAs), as well as population living in rural areas outside CMAs and CAs.

Remarks:

The rural area of Canada is the area that remains after the delineation of population centres using current census population data.

Within rural areas, population densities and living conditions can vary greatly. Included in rural areas are:

- small towns, villages and other populated places with less than 1,000 population according to the current census
- rural areas of census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations that may contain estate lots, as well as agricultural, undeveloped and non-developable lands
- agricultural lands
- remote and wilderness areas.

Refer to the related definitions of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); core, fringe and rural area; designated place (DPL); population centre (POPCTR) and population density.

Changes prior to the current census:

Prior to 2011, rural areas were the residual after the delineation of urban areas (now called population centres).
Prior to 2001, rural areas were the residual after the delineation of urban areas that was based on population data from the previous census.

Geographic Units: Urban area (UA)

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable.

Part B – Detailed definition:

The term 'urban area' (UA) is discontinued for the 2011 Census. Refer to the definition of 'population centre' (POPCTR).

Geographic Units: Urban core, urban fringe and rural fringe

Part A – Short definition:

The terms 'urban core, urban fringe and rural fringe' are discontinued for the 2011 Census. Refer to the definition of 'core, fringe and rural area'.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): Block-face

Part A – Short definition:

One side of a street between two consecutive intersections, such as one side of a city block.
Part B – Detailed definition:

A block-face is one side of a street between two consecutive features intersecting that street. The features can be other streets or boundaries of standard geographic areas.

Block-faces are used for generating block-face representative points, which in turn are used for geocoding and census data extraction when the street and address information are available.


Remarks:

Population and dwelling counts are not disseminated for individual block-faces, since there are confidentiality concerns about releasing small population and dwelling counts at this level of geography.

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of block-faces by province and territory.

Refer to related definitions of geocoding; representative point and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Changes prior to the current census:

Major changes in 2001:

- Block-faces were defined for the entire country, rather than only in urban centres covered by the former street network files.
- Block-faces were formed by addressable and non-addressable streets, rather than by addressable streets only.
- Two block-faces were generated opposite a road T-junction, rather than just one block-face.
- Block-faces were not formed when physical features (such as rivers or railroads) intersected the road unless these features were coincident with a boundary of a standard geographic area.
- Block-faces were not formed when a single-address enumeration area (EA) was smaller than a city block. In these cases, the EA was offset from the street, rather than digitally represented as a polygon intersecting the street.
- Block-faces were formed when streets crossed the limits of map tiles (the map tiles, which were based on the National Topographic System of Natural Resources Canada, formed the Canada-wide coverage in the 2001 National Geographic Base).
- Population and dwelling counts were not disseminated for individual block-faces.

Prior to 2001:

- Block-faces were defined only in urban centres covered by street network files.
- Block-faces were formed by addressable streets only.
- Only one block-face was generated opposite a road T-junction.
- Block-faces were formed when physical features intersected roads even when the boundaries of standard geographic areas were not coincident with these features.
- Block-faces were formed when a single-address EA was smaller than a city block since the EA was digitally represented as a polygon intersecting the street.
- Block-faces were not formed when streets crossed the limits of map tiles, since map tiles were not used.
- Population and dwelling counts were disseminated for individual block-faces.

Prior to 1991, block-faces were not created when EA boundaries split city blocks.
Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): **Coordinate system**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

A coordinate system is a reference system based on mathematical rules for specifying positions (locations) on the surface of the earth. The coordinate values can be spherical (latitude and longitude) using angular units of measure such as degrees, minutes and seconds or planar (Universal Transverse Mercator) using linear units such as metres.

Cartographic boundary files, digital boundary files, representative points and road network files are disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates.


**Remarks:**

A coordinate system is usually defined by a datum, ellipsoid and projection, and is specified in terms of units (e.g., degrees, metres).

Latitude and longitude coordinates, often referred to as geographic coordinates, are spherical. Lines of latitude (also called parallels) run in an east-west direction around the earth parallel to the equator. Latitude is the angular measurement of a location expressed in degrees north or south of the equator, ranging from 0° at the equator to 90°N or 90°S at the poles. Lines of longitude (also called meridians) run in a north-south direction from pole to pole. Longitude is the angular measurement of a location east or west of the prime meridian (which runs through Greenwich, England), ranging from 0° at the prime meridian to 180°E or 180°W. The 180th meridian is the approximate location of the International Date Line.

For the land mass of Canada, latitudes range from about 42°N to 83°N and longitudes range from approximately 53°W to 141°W.

Latitude coordinates south of the equator and longitude coordinates west of the prime meridian have minus signs when stored in a digital database. Latitude/longitude coordinates are convenient for transferring and disseminating spatial digital data, and are normally expressed in decimal degrees on a database. However, maps should not be generated using these spherical coordinates, as they are unprojected, resulting in a map that appears distorted (see Figure 14 in map projection definition).

It is now common for geographic information system (GIS) software to convert coordinates from one frame of reference to coordinates of another frame of reference, such as transforming the Lambert conformal conic projection to latitude/longitude coordinates.

The Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) coordinate system is no longer used as the working coordinate system or for disseminating spatial digital data.

Refer to related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); datum; digital boundary files (DBFs); map projection; representative point; road network file (RNF) and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

**Changes prior to the current census:**

For 1996, street network files were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates, but the working coordinate system was UTM.
Prior to 1996, street network files were disseminated in UTM coordinates only.

**Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): Datum**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

A datum is a geodetic reference system which includes an ellipsoid and an origin against which the latitude and longitude of all other points on the earth’s surface are referenced. A datum may often be associated with a particular ellipsoid (mathematical reference model of the earth).

**Censuses:** 2011, 2006, 2001 (North American Datum of 1983)  

**Remarks:**

Datums and the coordinate reference systems based on them were developed to describe geographic positions for surveying, mapping and navigation. Over the years, datums evolved from spherical to ellipsoidal models using satellite measurements. The earth is not a sphere, but an ellipsoid flattened slightly at the poles and bulging somewhat at the equator. The ellipsoid is used as a surface of reference for the mathematical model of the earth. Since mathematical models of the size and shape of the earth are now more precise, it has become necessary to change to a more accurate model.

There are two datums used in Canada: the North American Datum of 1927 (NAD27) and the North American Datum of 1983 (NAD83). Both are geodetic reference systems, but each is based on different measurements and reference ellipsoids. The NAD27 is based on the Clarke ellipsoid of 1866, and its reference point is a fixed point in Kansas. The NAD83 is an earth-centred datum based on a newly defined ellipsoid – the Geodetic Reference System of 1980 (GRS80) – and its reference point is the centre of the earth, as opposed to a point on the earth’s surface.

The National Transformation software, developed by the Geodetic Survey of Canada, is used to convert coordinates between the NAD27 and the NAD83 reference systems in Canada. Spatial data based on one datum will not be coincident with the same spatial data based on another datum. Positional differences between NAD27 and NAD83 can be as great as hundreds of metres in some instances. Other longitudinal analyses will also be affected by a change in datum. For example, block-face and census subdivision (CSD) representative points from censuses prior to 2001 may not fall in the correct current census standard geographic area due to a shift caused by using different datums.

Refer to the related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); coordinate system; digital boundary files (DBFs); map projection; representative point; road network file (RNF) and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

**Changes prior to the current census:**

Prior to 2001, digital boundary files (DBFs), digital cartographic files (DCFs), street network files (SNFs), block-face and EA representative points, and other spatial data were based on the NAD27.
Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): **Ecumene**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Ecumene is a term used by geographers to mean inhabited land. It generally refers to land where people have made their permanent home, and to all work areas that are considered occupied and used for agricultural or any other economic purpose. Thus, there can be various types of ecumenes, each having its own unique characteristics (population ecumene, agricultural ecumene, industrial ecumene, etc.).

**Censuses:**
- 1986 (urban population ecumene for 12 census metropolitan areas)

**Remarks:**

Ecumene is derived from the Greek root *oixos* meaning inhabited and *nenon* meaning space.

Statistics Canada delineates the population and agricultural ecumenes as follows:

1. The national population ecumene includes dissemination blocks with a minimum population density. To ensure visibility for small-scale thematic mapping, the detailed ecumene limits are manually generalized and small, discontiguous ecumene pockets are aggregated.
2. The national agricultural ecumene includes all dissemination areas with 'significant' agricultural activity. Agricultural indicators, such as the ratio of agricultural land on census farms relative to total land area, and total economic value of agricultural production, are used. Regional variations are also taken into account. The ecumene is generalized for small-scale mapping.

It is recommended that the ecumene concept be used for dot and choropleth maps. If an ecumene is not applied to dot maps, the requisite number of dots may be randomly spread over entire unit areas. This approach defeats the main attributes of dot mapping (i.e., showing correct location, extent and density of the dot symbols). One of the inherent limitations of choropleth maps is that the statistical distribution is assumed to be homogeneous or uniformly spread over each unit area, and is consequently represented by tones or colours covering the entire unit. Thus, an ecumene renders a more accurate depiction of the spatial distribution of data.

Refer to related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); datum; dissemination area (DA); dissemination block (DB); Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) and thematic map.

**Changes prior to the current census:**

not applicable

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): **Geocoding**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable
Part B – Detailed definition:

Geocoding is the process of assigning geographic identifiers (codes or x,y coordinates) to map features and data records. The resulting geocodes permit data to be linked geographically to a place on the earth.

Households, postal codes and place of work data are linked to block-face representative points (coordinates) when the street and address information is available; otherwise, they are linked to dissemination block (DB) representative points. In some cases, postal codes and place of work data are linked to dissemination area (DA) representative points when they cannot be linked to DBs. As well, place of work data are linked to census subdivision representative points when the data cannot be linked to DAs.


Remarks:

Statistics Canada’s Custom Area Creation Service provides census data tabulations for user-defined areas, such as provincial electoral districts, local planning areas and school districts. When tabulating census data for user-defined areas, households are included or excluded depending on whether the representative points to which they are linked fall inside or outside the user-defined area (Figure 13). Thus, the data retrieved are most precise when user-defined areas coincide with dissemination block boundaries. Census data for individual block-faces are not disseminated.

Refer to related definitions of block-face, census subdivision (CSD); dissemination area (DA); dissemination block (DB); postal code, representative point and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Changes prior to the current census:

Prior to 2001, households, postal codes and place of work data were linked to enumeration area (EA) representative points when they could not be linked to block-face representative points. As well, unrounded block-face population counts were provided for user confirmation before tabulating characteristic data for custom areas.
Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): **Map projection**

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

A map projection is the process of transforming and representing positions from the earth's three-dimensional curved surface to a two-dimensional (flat) surface. The process is accomplished by a direct geometric projection or by a mathematically derived transformation.

The Lambert conformal conic map projection is widely used for general maps of Canada at small scales and is the most common map projection used at Statistics Canada.

**Censuses:**


Remarks:

The Earth’s surface cannot be flattened without distorting geometrical properties, such as area, shape, distance and direction. These spatial properties can be preserved individually (at least locally) and in certain combinations on map projections. However, the four basic properties of area, shape, distance and direction cannot all be held true simultaneously. Therefore, it is important to select a projection having the properties that are suited to the mapping situation. For example, a projection that accurately represents the shapes of the continents will distort their relative sizes.

The Lambert conformal conic projection (Figure 14) provides good directional and shape relationships for mid-latitude regions having a mainly east-to-west extent. Standard parallels at 49°N and 77°N are most commonly used. The scale is correct along the standard parallels only; areal deformation decreases between and increases away from the standard parallels. The central meridian, normally at 91°52’W, is a straight line about which the projection is symmetrical. False eastings and northings are given to ensure positive coordinate values in linear units of measure (metres).
Figure 14  Example of a map projection and unprojected coordinates

A. Lambert conformal conic projection

B. Unprojected coordinates (latitude and longitude)


Latitude and longitude is **not** a map projection, as the coordinates are spherical (angular units of measure such as degrees, minutes and seconds) therefore **unprojected**. It is recommended that maps not be generated using these spherical coordinates because they result in maps that are distorted (Figure 14).
The Lambert conformal conic map projection is the working projection for cartographic boundary files, digital boundary files, road network files and the Spatial Data Infrastructure, and for generating representative points.

Refer to related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); coordinate system; datum; digital boundary files (DBFs); representative point; road network file (RNF) and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Changes prior to the current census:

Prior to 2001, street network files were based on the Transverse Mercator map projection/Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) coordinate system.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): Reference map

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

A reference map shows the location of the geographic areas for which census data are tabulated and disseminated. The maps display the boundaries, names and unique identifiers of standard geographic areas, as well as major cultural and physical features, such as roads, railroads, coastlines, rivers and lakes.


Remarks:

The boundaries, names and unique identifiers of the standard geographic areas reflect those in effect on January 1, 2011 (the geographic reference date for the 2011 Census).

The geographic area boundaries, names, types and unique identifiers, and the relationships among the various geographic levels, are found on Statistics Canada's Spatial Data Infrastructure. The vector base map information (coastlines, rivers and lakes) is taken from the National Geographic Database. Water toponymy (river names, lake names, names of bays, oceans, gulfs, straits, seas and islands) is taken from the Canadian Geographical Names Data Base maintained by Natural Resources Canada.

Reference maps can assist users in relating published census data to actual locations on the ground, or in defining their own custom areas relative to the standard geographic areas.

Refer to related definitions of geographic reference date; Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) and to the Reference Maps and Thematic Maps, Reference Guide (Catalogue no. 92-143-G).

Changes prior to the current census:

Not applicable
Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): **Representative point**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

A representative point is a coordinate point that represents a line or a polygon. The point is centrally located along the line, and centrally located or population weighted in the polygon.

Representative points are generated for block-faces, as well as for selected geographic areas – province/territory (PR), federal electoral district (FED), economic region (ER), census division (CD), census metropolitan area/census agglomeration (CMA/CA), census subdivision (CSD), population centre (POPCTR), designated place (DPL), census tract (CT), dissemination area (DA) and dissemination block (DB).

Households, postal codes™ and place of work data are linked to block-face representative points (coordinates) when the street and address information is available; otherwise, they are linked to dissemination block (DB) representative points. In some cases, postal codes and place of work data are linked to dissemination area (DA) representative points when they cannot be linked to DBs. As well, place of work data are linked to census subdivision (CSD) representative points when the data cannot be linked to DAs.


**Remarks:**

Representative points are located by the following methods:

1. **Block-face representative points**

   The block-face representative points are generated using the ArcGIS® software (version 9.3.1) in conjunction with the Spatial Data Infrastructure, including selected water polygon. The points are initially calculated and stored based on the Lambert conformal conic projection; they are also transformed to latitude/longitude coordinates.

   The block-face representative points are computed along addressable and non-addressable streets, midway (or approximately midway) between two consecutive features intersecting a street. The intersecting features can be other streets or boundaries of standard geographic areas.

   The points are set back a perpendicular distance of 10, 5, 1 or 0.5 metres from the street centre line to ensure that all points have unique coordinates, and are located in the correct block and on the correct side of the street.

   Some block-face representative points may fall in water bodies if the points are adjacent to bridges or causeways.

   Some geometry shifts and realignments may cause 2011 representative points for block-faces to be different from 2006.
2. Geographic area representative points

The representative points for standard geographic areas are generated using ArcGIS® software (version 9.3.1) in conjunction with their respective digital boundary file (DBF). The most detailed hydrography is used to ensure that representative points do not fall in water where possible. The points are initially calculated and stored based on the Lambert conformal conic projection; they are also transformed to latitude/longitude coordinates.

Representative points for 2011 are generated for the dissemination block (DB) as label points to ensure they do not fall in water. The geographic area representative points are initially derived as centroids, which may fall in water. To ensure geographic area representative points do not fall in water, except in cases where entire polygons are in water, the DB representative point nearest to the geographic area centroid is selected as the new representative point for the geographic area.
A. Unweighted representative points

The representative points for all geographic areas excluding the dissemination area are unweighted. The points are generated using the ArcGIS® software. The software locates the point as nearest to the geographical centre of the polygon as possible, ensuring the point falls on land areas whenever possible. Topology checks are applied to ensure that the points fall within the appropriate geographic area. Since some dissemination blocks and designated places are located in water only, their representative points will fall in water. Where the geographic area is in multiple parts, the point is located in the portion having the largest area.

Figure 15 shows an example of dissemination block representative points.

B. Weighted representative points

Mean centre weighted by population

The representative points for dissemination areas (DAs) are weighted using the population mean centre. Formula 1 depicts the mathematical methods for calculating the weighted mean centre representative points. One of two pairs of equations is used, depending on the population of the DA. The first pair of equations is used when the DA has a population greater than zero. The second equation is used when the DA has a population equal to zero.

In the first pair of equations, the x-coordinate is calculated by first multiplying the population of each dissemination block (DB) in the DA by the x-coordinate (easting) of its representative point. The products are summed over all DBs in the DA, and the result is then divided by the total population of the DA. The y-coordinate (northing) of the DA is calculated by applying the same methodology, only using the y-coordinate information for the component DBs.

The second pair of equations is used when the DA has zero population. For this, the x-coordinate (easting) is calculated by summing the x-coordinate of the representative points of all DBs in the DA. This sum is then divided by the number of DBs in the DA. The y-coordinate (northing) of the DA is calculated by applying the same methodology, only using the y-coordinate information for the component DBs.

Examples of calculating the mean centre representative points weighted by population using the above methods are shown immediately below the formulae.
Formula 1  Mean centre weighted by population

1. When at least one dissemination block in the DA has population > 0

\[
x = \frac{\sum p_i x_i}{\sum p_i}
\]

\[
y = \frac{\sum p_i y_i}{\sum p_i}
\]

where

- \( p_i \) = population of the \( i \)th dissemination block in the DA
- \( x_i \) = x-coordinate (easting) in metres, of representative point of the \( i \)th dissemination block in the DA
- \( y_i \) = y-coordinate (northing) in metres, of representative point of the \( i \)th dissemination block in the DA
- \( n \) = number of dissemination blocks in the DA

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DA1</th>
<th>Dissemination block 1</th>
<th>Population</th>
<th>x (easting)</th>
<th>y (northing)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>300</td>
<td>7471000</td>
<td>1205000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>150</td>
<td>7472000</td>
<td>1206000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>7473000</td>
<td>1207000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using equation 1, the weighted representative point for DA1 is:

\[
x = \frac{[300*7471000] + [150*7472000] + [50*7473000]}{500} = 7471500
\]

\[
y = \frac{[300*1205000] + [150*1206000] + [50*1207000]}{500} = 1205500
\]

2. When all dissemination blocks in the DA have population = 0

\[
x = \frac{\sum x_i}{n}
\]

\[
y = \frac{\sum y_i}{n}
\]

Minimum squared distance weighted by population

If any weighted representative points fall outside the dissemination area (DA) (e.g., for crescent-shaped polygons) or fall in water bodies, the points are generated using the minimum squared distance weighted by population (formula 2). The first equation is used when the DA has a population greater than zero. The second equation is used when the DA has a population equal to zero.

In the first equation, the population weighted squared distance is calculated for each dissemination block (DB) and the DB with the minimum value is chosen. For each DB, the population weighted squared distance is calculated by measuring the distance between its representative point and the representative points of all other DBs. Each distance is then squared and further multiplied by the population of the other DBs. These values are then all summed to create a value for the DB in question.
In the second equation, an unweighted squared distance is calculated for each DB, and the DB with the minimum value is chosen. For each DB, the population weighted squared distance is calculated by measuring the distance between its representative point and the representative points of all other DBs. Each distance is then squared and these values are all summed to create a value for the DB in question.

Topology checks are applied to ensure that the points fall within the DA. Since some DAs are located in water only, their representative points fall in water.

Examples of calculating the minimum squared distance representative point weighted by population using the above methods are shown immediately below the formulae.
Formula 2  Minimum squared distance weighted by population

1. When at least one dissemination block in the DA has population > 0

\[ d_{\text{min}} = \min \left[ \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( x_j - x_i \right)^2 + \left( y_j - y_i \right)^2 \right] \]

where

\[ d_{\text{min}} = \text{minimum squared distance between existing dissemination block representative points} \]

\[ p_i = \text{population of the } i\text{th dissemination block in the DA} \]

\[ x_i = \text{x-coordinate (eastings) in metres, of representative point of the } i\text{th dissemination block in the DA} \]

\[ y_i = \text{y-coordinate (northings) in metres, of representative point of the } i\text{th dissemination block in the DA} \]

\[ x_j = \text{x-coordinate (eastings) in metres, of representative point of the } j\text{th dissemination block in the DA} \]

\[ y_j = \text{y-coordinate (northings) in metres, of representative point of the } j\text{th dissemination block in the DA} \]

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DA1 Dissemination block 1</th>
<th>Population</th>
<th>x (eastings)</th>
<th>y (northing)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>7471000</td>
<td>1205000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>7472000</td>
<td>1206000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>7473000</td>
<td>1207000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using equation 1, the iterations and results are:

Distance 1. Block 1 \( \rightarrow \) Block 2 = \( \left[(7471000 - 7472000)^2 + (1205000 - 1206000)^2\right] \times 150 = 300,000,000 \)

Distance 2. Block 2 \( \rightarrow \) Block 1 = \( \left[(7472000 - 7471000)^2 + (1206000 - 1205000)^2\right] \times 300 = 600,000,000 \)

Distance 3. Block 3 \( \rightarrow \) Block 1 = \( \left[(7473000 - 7471000)^2 + (1207000 - 1205000)^2\right] \times 300 = 2,400,000,000 \)

The existing representative points for either dissemination block 1 or dissemination block 2 are selected since they have the minimum squared distance weighted by population.

Using equation 2, the iterations and results are:

Distance 1. Block 1 \( \rightarrow \) Block 2 = \( \left[(7471000 - 7472000)^2 + (1205000 - 1206000)^2\right] = 2,000,000 \)

Distance 2. Block 2 \( \rightarrow \) Block 1 = \( \left[(7472000 - 7471000)^2 + (1206000 - 1205000)^2\right] = 2,000,000 \)

Distance 3. Block 3 \( \rightarrow \) Block 1 = \( \left[(7473000 - 7471000)^2 + (1207000 - 1205000)^2\right] = 8,000,000 \)

The existing representative point for dissemination block 2 is selected since it has the minimum squared distance.
Refer to related definitions of block-face; census subdivision (CSD); designated place (DPL); digital boundary files (DBFs); dissemination area (DA); dissemination block (DB); geocoding; population centre (POPCTR); postal code; Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) and the Postal Code Conversion File (PCCF), Reference Guide (Catalogue no. 92-153-G).

Changes prior to the current census:

Prior to 2001, enumeration area (EA) representative points were disseminated.

Prior to 1996, all representative points were called 'centroids'.

1. Geographic area representative points

   • For 2006, the representative points for geographic areas were generated as centroids and then moved if they fell into water bodies.

   • For 2001, the representative points for blocks, dissemination areas, census subdivisions and designated places could fall in water bodies. In addition, the dissemination area points were not weighted.

   • For 1996, EA representative points were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates and in x,y coordinates of the Lambert conformal conic projection. The representative points were created either with the Street Network File (SNF) or manually.

     • Representative points located in EAs within the SNF were created using the ArcGIS® software, which located the point suitable for label or symbol placement in each polygon. Steps were taken so that the points did not fall in water bodies. If the EA was in multiple parts, the point was located, when possible, in the portion with the largest number of occupied private dwellings (based on the 1991 block-face counts). In some cases, however, the representative point was located in the EA portion having the largest land area.

     • Representative points located in EAs outside SNF coverage were created by a manual procedure based on the visual inspection of building and/or street patterns on EA reference maps (some of which had topographic base map information). The representative point was located, when possible, within a predominant cluster of buildings and/or streets. If there was no predominant cluster, then the point was located between two or more clusters. In the absence of any cluster, the point was placed at the visual centre of the EA. If an EA was in multiple parts, the point was located in the portion with the largest number of dwellings. The representative point was located in the land-based portion of the EA.

     • For 1991, the EA representative points within SNF coverage were created using the ArcGIS® software, which locates the point suitable for label or symbol placement in each polygon; some points were located in water bodies. In addition, for EAs in multiple parts in SNF coverage, there was no rule for selecting the EA part to which the representative point was assigned. The EA representative points were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates, UTM coordinates, and in x,y coordinates of the Lambert conformal conic projection.

     • Prior to 1991, EA representative points within SNF coverage were computed by a different method. An algorithm selected one of the existing block-face representative points (based on their number and concentration) within an EA as the overall EA representative point. The points were calculated and disseminated in UTM coordinates.
2. Block-face representative points

- For 2001, block-face representative points were set back a distance of 10, 5 or 1 metre(s) from the street centre line. As well, points were generated when streets crossed the limits of National Topographic Database (NTDB) map tiles.
- Prior to 2001, block-face representative points were not generated when streets crossed the limits of map tiles, since map tiles were not used.
- For 1996, block-face representative points were generated within street network file (SNF) coverage only, and the points were set back a distance of 22, 11, 5 or 1 metre(s) from the street centre line. The points were calculated in Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) coordinates, but were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates.
- Prior to 1996, some block-face representative points did not have unique coordinate values, and all points were set back a perpendicular distance of 22 metres from the street centre line. The points were calculated and disseminated in UTM coordinates.
- Prior to 1991, block-faces were not created when EA boundary segments did not follow visible features.

Note:
1. A centroid is the term given to the centre of a polygon or area. In cases of irregular shaped polygons, the centroid is calculated to approximate the 'centre' of a polygon.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): Thematic map

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

A thematic map shows the spatial distribution of one or more specific data themes for selected geographic areas. The map may be qualitative in nature (e.g., predominant farm types) or quantitative (e.g., percentage population change).


Remarks:

A thematic map is also called a special-purpose, single-topic, or statistical map. A thematic map focuses on the spatial variability of a specific distribution or theme (such as population density or average annual income), whereas a reference map focuses on the location and names of features. Thematic maps normally include some locational or reference information, such as place names or major water bodies, to help map readers familiarize themselves with the geographic area covered on the map.

All thematic maps are composed of two important elements: a base map and statistical data. Normally, the two are available as digital files, such as a cartographic boundary file and census data. Desk-top geographic information systems or computer-mapping packages are typically used to generate thematic maps.

Two common thematic maps produced at Statistics Canada are dot maps and choropleth\(^1\) maps. The ecumene concept is generally used for dot and choropleth maps, to ensure that the spatial representation of census data is limited to inhabited land. To ensure confidentiality, all census data are subject to random rounding and/or data suppression.
Thematic maps can be used for exploratory spatial data analysis, confirming hypotheses, synthesizing spatial data by revealing patterns and relationships, and data presentation.

Refer to related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); ecumene and reference map.

Note:

1. The term ‘choropleth’ is derived from the Greek choros, for place, and plethos, for magnitude. The choropleth method symbolizes statistical data as they occur within the boundaries of predefined geographic units (such as census divisions or census tracts). Usually, the data are grouped into a limited number of classes, with each class representing a range of data values. A logical sequence of colours or grey tones is then applied to each class. It is important to note that choropleth maps should use standardized data values (e.g., ratios or percentages) rather than absolute values.

Changes prior to the current census:

Prior to 1976, thematic maps were generated using manual cartographic methods.

Other: Forward sortation area (FSA)

See the definition of postal code\(^{OM}\).

Other: Geographic reference date

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

The geographic reference date is a date determined by Statistics Canada for the purpose of finalizing the geographic framework for which census data will be collected, tabulated and reported. For the 2011 Census, the geographic reference date is January 1, 2011.


Remarks:

Names, boundaries and other attributes of geographic areas change frequently (examples of these changes include municipal amalgamations and annexations, and changes in the name and status of municipalities). Since the geographic framework is used for census data collection, the geographic reference date must be set sufficiently in advance of Census Day to permit all changes to be processed in time. Furthermore, notification of these changes is normally not received from the applicable federal and provincial authorities until after the changes have occurred. For these reasons, the census reports data according to the geographic areas that are in effect on January 1, 2011, provided that Statistics Canada receives the information on the changes by March 1, 2011.

Since the geographic framework is established according to the geographic areas in effect as of January 1, 2011, and census data refer to conditions as they exist on Census Day (May 10, 2011), census data may be reported for geographic areas that have subsequently changed during this period.
The geographic framework established for census purposes may not reflect the actual geographic framework in effect on January 1, 2011, if Statistics Canada never receives, or does not receive by March 1, 2011, the appropriate notification from relevant federal and provincial authorities.

Changes prior to the current census:

Prior to 1981, the geographic reference date was set to the same date as Census Day. From the 1981 Census onwards, it has been set at January 1 of the census year, which has improved the timeliness of the release of census products.

Other: Postal code

Part A – Short definition:

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed definition:

The postal code is a six-character code defined and maintained by Canada Post Corporation for the purpose of sorting and delivering mail.

1991, 1986 (20% sample)

Remarks:

Structure of the postal code

The form of the postal code is ‘ANA NAN’, where A is an alphabetic character and N is a numeric character. The first character of a postal code represents a province or territory, or a major sector entirely within a province (Table 9).

Table 9 First character of the postal code and corresponding province, territory or region

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First character of the postal code</th>
<th>Province, territory or region</th>
<th>First character of the postal code</th>
<th>Province, territory or region</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Newfoundland and Labrador</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Metropolitan Toronto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Nova Scotia</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Southwestern Ontario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Prince Edward Island</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>Northern Ontario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>New Brunswick</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Manitoba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Eastern Quebec</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Saskatchewan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Metropolitan Montréal</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>Alberta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Western Quebec</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>British Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Eastern Ontario</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Northwest Territories and Nunavut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Central Ontario</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Yukon Territory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The regions used in this table are defined by Canada Post Corporation.

The first three characters of the postal code identifying the forward sortation area (FSA). FSAs are associated with a postal facility from which mail delivery originates.

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of postal codes and forward sortation areas by province and territory. They are provided by Canada Post Corporation and are valid as of May 2011.

**Postal codes captured from census questionnaires**

The postal code is captured for all households from the address information provided by the respondent on the front page of the census questionnaire on May 10, 2011. The respondent's postal code is accepted whether or not it is the same as the postal code assigned by Canada Post Corporation to that address. The postal code of a household is validated and processed using the following criteria:

- The respondent's postal code is validated against a reference file at the census subdivision level. Priority is always given to accepting the postal code that is most likely to have been active and in use on Census Day. However, postal codes that may have been retired by Canada Post Corporation within the last six months but continue to be used may be accepted in some cases.
- In cases where a postal code is not provided or is not valid, an imputation process assigns a valid postal code.

The postal code provided by respondents may not be the same as the postal code of the dwelling in which they live. For example, they may denote the postal code of their mailing address, such as a post office location (as in the case of general delivery) or a business location. Consequently, some respondents' postal codes may fall outside the FSA in which their dwelling is located.

Users should proceed with caution if postal codes are used as a proxy for standard geographic areas. Postal codes do not necessarily respect the boundaries of standard geographic areas (e.g., the same postal code can fall in two or more census subdivisions).

For more detailed information, refer to the Postal Code Conversion File, Reference Guide (Catalogue no. 92-153-G).

OM: Postal code is an official mark of Canada Post Corporation.

**Changes prior to the current census:**

Not applicable

**Other: Spatial data quality elements**

**Part A – Short definition:**

Not applicable

**Part B – Detailed definition:**

Spatial data quality elements provide information on the fitness for use of a spatial database by describing why, when and how the data are created, and how accurate the data are. The elements include an overview describing the purpose and usage, as well as specific quality elements reporting on the lineage, positional accuracy, attribute accuracy, logical consistency and completeness. This information is provided to users for all spatial data products disseminated for the census.

Remarks:

Current technology makes it possible for a growing number of spatial data producers and users to access geospatial data. Digital datasets can now be obtained through geospatial clearinghouses/warehouses by users with diverse backgrounds. Furthermore, data producers can now more easily add new features, attributes and relationships to those already in the database. Therefore, any given dataset may be the result of the contributions of a number of data producers. Since perfect, complete and correct spatial data rarely exist, the assumptions and limitations affecting the creation or modification of data must be fully documented. Consequently, the need to communicate information about datasets to this ever-increasing pool of users becomes critical.

Data quality concepts provide an important framework for both data producers and users. Proper documentation provides spatial data producers with a better knowledge of their holdings, and allows them to more effectively manage data production, storage, updating and reuse. Data users can use this information to determine the appropriateness of a dataset for a given application and lessen the possibility of misuse. Highlighted below are elements of spatial data quality.

Overview elements

1. Purpose statement - Describes the rationale for creating a dataset and contains information about its intended use.
2. Usage statement - Describes the application(s) for which a dataset is used by the data producer or by data users.

Specific elements

1. Lineage - Describes the history of the spatial data, including descriptions of the source material from which the data were derived, and the methods of derivation. It also contains the dates of the source material, and all transformations involved in producing the final digital files or map products.
2. Positional accuracy - Refers to the absolute and relative accuracy of the positions of geographic features. ‘Absolute accuracy’ is the closeness of the coordinate values in a dataset to values accepted as or being true. ‘Relative accuracy’ is the closeness of the relative positions of features to their respective relative positions accepted as or being true. Descriptions of positional accuracy include the quality of the final file or product after all transformations.
3. Attribute accuracy - Refers to the accuracy of the quantitative and qualitative information attached to each feature (such as population for a population centre, street name, census subdivision name and code).
4. Logical consistency - Describes the dependability of relationships encoded in the data structure of the digital spatial data.
5. Completeness - Refers to the degree to which geographic features, their attributes and their relationships are included or omitted in a dataset. It also includes information on selection criteria, definitions used, and other relevant mapping rules.

These elements are reported in the reference guides that accompany the spatial files and products, and form a subset of information contained in the metadata.

Changes prior to the current census:

Prior to 1991, the data quality elements were not described in the supporting documentation for spatial data products.
Other: **Urban population size group**

**Part A – Short definition:**

The term 'urban population size group' is discontinued for the 2011 Census. Refer to the definition of *population centre (POPCTR)*.
Appendix A Census questionnaire content and derived variables since Confederation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>1871</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of birth</td>
<td>1871</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (in addition to date of birth)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex</td>
<td>1871</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marital status</td>
<td>1871</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal marital status</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common-law status</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobility – Place of residence one year ago</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobility – Place of residence five years ago</td>
<td>1961</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of moves since previous census</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of first marriage</td>
<td>1941</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of children ever born</td>
<td>1941</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Languages and ethnocultural characteristics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge of official languages</td>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge of non-official languages</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home language</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother tongue</td>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language of work</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of birth</td>
<td>1871</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of birth of parents</td>
<td>1891</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citizenship</td>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landed immigrant status</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Period/year of immigration</td>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethnic origin</td>
<td>1871</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registered or Treaty Indian status</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Membership in a First Nation or Indian band</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aboriginal group (Aboriginal identity [single question])</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aboriginal identity (derived)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visible minority group</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religion (usually asked every 10 years)</td>
<td>1871</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity limitations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At home</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At school or at work</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In other activities</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term disabilities or handicaps</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficulties with daily living activities</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School attendance</td>
<td>1871</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highest grade of elementary or secondary schooling</td>
<td>1941</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Years of schooling (university)</td>
<td>1961</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Years of schooling (other)</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total years of schooling</td>
<td>1941</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highest level of educational attainment</td>
<td>1961</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary (high) school diploma or equivalent</td>
<td>1976</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completion of full-time vocational course</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-university certificate or diploma</td>
<td>1976</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registered apprenticeship or other trades certificate or diploma</td>
<td>1981</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>College certificates or diplomas</td>
<td>1981</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University certificates, diplomas, degrees</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highest certificate, diploma or degree</td>
<td>1961</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major field of study</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Province of elementary or secondary schooling (or outside Canada)</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Province, territory or country where highest certificate, diploma, degree (above high school) was completed</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Household activities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unpaid housework</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caring for children without pay</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Providing unpaid care/assistance to seniors</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Labour market activities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actual hours worked last week</td>
<td>1951</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usual hours worked each week</td>
<td>1911</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last date of work</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industry</td>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupation</td>
<td>1871</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class of worker</td>
<td>1891</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weeks worked in reference year</td>
<td>1911</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full-time/part-time work</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary lay-off/absent from job</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New job to start in four weeks or less</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Looked for work in past four weeks</td>
<td>1961</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability for work</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorporation status</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journey to work</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of work</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode of transportation to work</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Income characteristics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Income in year previous to census year</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wages and salaries</td>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix A

#### Questions asked for the first time before 1981

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Net non-farm self-employment income</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net farm self-employment income</td>
<td>1961</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family allowances</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Child Tax Credits / child benefits</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old Age Security Pension (OAS) and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS)</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benefits from Canada or Quebec Pension Plan (CPP/QPP)</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benefits from Employment Insurance</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other income from government sources</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interest, dividends and other investment income</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retirement pensions, superannuation, annuities</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other money income</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Income tax paid</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Family and household characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural operator</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household maintainer(s)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationship to Person 1 or head of household</td>
<td>1891</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family head (in addition to household head)</td>
<td>1921</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenure (owned/rented)</td>
<td>1921</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenure (condominium)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenure (band housing)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence of mortgage</td>
<td>1941</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who holds first mortgage</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of persons per household</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shelter costs – renter</td>
<td>1941</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment of reduced rent (e.g., government subsidized housing)</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automobiles available for personal use</td>
<td>1941</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vacation home ownership</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major home appliances</td>
<td>1931</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yearly payments of electricity</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yearly payments of natural gas, oil, coal, wood, etc.</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yearly payments of water</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shelter costs – owner mortgage</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shelter costs – owner property taxes</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shelter costs – owner condominium</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shelter costs – owner condominium fees</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Dwelling characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of rooms</td>
<td>1941</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of bedrooms</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions asked for the first time before 1981</td>
<td>Census (including long form)</td>
<td>Census</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Period of construction</td>
<td>1941 Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition of dwelling</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of dwelling</td>
<td>1941 Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value of dwelling</td>
<td>1941 Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of dwellings in the building</td>
<td>1941 N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garage</td>
<td>1971 N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piped running water in the dwelling</td>
<td>1941 N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bath or shower</td>
<td>1941 N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of flush toilet in building</td>
<td>1941 N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unoccupied dwelling, reason for</td>
<td>1976 N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seasonal/marginal dwelling</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of occupancy</td>
<td>1941 Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source of water supply</td>
<td>1971 N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method of sewage disposal</td>
<td>1971 N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal type of heating equipment</td>
<td>1941 Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal fuel used for cooking</td>
<td>1971 N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal fuel used for heating</td>
<td>1941 Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal fuel used for water heating</td>
<td>1971 Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coverage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you leave anyone out?</td>
<td>1971 Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household roster</td>
<td>1971 N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of temporary residents</td>
<td>1971 Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of usual residents</td>
<td>1971 Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wartime service</td>
<td>1951 N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to personal information 92 years after the census</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Statistics Canada, 2011 Census of Canada

Symbols

N  not included
Y  included
Appendix B - 2011 Census questionnaire

See the following page for the 2011 Census questionnaire.
1. **Name**

   - PERSON 1
   - PERSON 2
   - PERSON 3
   - PERSON 4
   - PERSON 5

2. **Sex**

   - Male
   - Female

3. **Date of Birth and Age**

   - PERSON 1
   - PERSON 2
   - PERSON 3
   - PERSON 4
   - PERSON 5

4. **Marital Status**

   - Legally married (and not separated)
   - Divorced
   - Separated, but still living together
   - Never legally married
   - Widowed

5. **Relationship to Person 1**

   - Father-in-law or mother-in-law
   - Grandchild of Person 1
   - Son-in-law or daughter-in-law
   - Brother or sister of Person 1
   - Son or daughter of both
   - Son or daughter of Person 1
   - Son or daughter of both
   - Same-sex partner of Person 1
   - Opposite-sex partner of Person 1
   - Boarder, lodger, or room-mate's son or daughter
   - Lodger's husband or wife
   - Grandfather or grandmother
   - Niece or nephew
   - Brother-in-law or sister-in-law
   - Room-mate's son or daughter
   - Lodger's son or daughter
   - Boarder's son or daughter
   - Other

6. **Language**

   - English
   - French
   - Both English and French
   - Neither English nor French
   - English only
   - French only
   - Other

7. **Ability to speak English or French well**

   - Yes, English
   - Yes, French
   - Yes, both
   - Neither

8. **Can this person make his or her 2011 Census information available in 2103 (92 years after the census)?**

   - Yes
   - No

9. **Does this person agree to be counted in the 2011 Census?**

   - Yes
   - No

10. **Additional Information**

    - Place of enumeration
    - Relationship to Person 1
    - Sex
    - Date of birth and age
    - Marital status
    - Language
    - Ability to speak English or French well
    - Can this person make his or her 2011 Census information available in 2103 (92 years after the census)?
    - Does this person agree to be counted in the 2011 Census?
Appendix C Data quality, confidentiality and random rounding

Data quality

General

The 2011 Census was a large and complex undertaking and, while considerable effort was taken to ensure high standards throughout all collection and processing operations, the resulting estimates are inevitably subject to a certain degree of error. Users of census data should be aware that such error exists, and should have some appreciation of its main components, so that they can assess the usefulness of census data for their purposes and the risks involved in basing conclusions or decisions on these data.

Errors can arise at virtually every stage of the census process, from the preparation of collection materials through data processing, including the listing of dwellings and the collection of data. Some errors occur at random, and when the individual responses are aggregated for a sufficiently large group, such errors tend to cancel out. For errors of this nature, the larger the group, the more accurate the corresponding estimate. It is for this reason that users are advised to be cautious when using small area estimates. There are some errors, however, which might occur more systematically, and which result in ‘biased’ estimates. Because the bias from such errors is persistent no matter how large the group for which responses are aggregated, and because bias is particularly difficult to measure, systematic errors are a more serious problem for most data users than the random errors referred to previously.

For census data in general, the principal types of error are as follows:

(a) coverage errors, which occur when dwellings or individuals are missed, incorrectly enumerated or counted more than once

(b) non-response errors, which result when responses cannot be obtained from a certain number of households and/or individuals, because of extended absence or some other reason or when responses cannot be obtained from a certain number of questions in a complete questionnaire

(c) response errors, which occur when the respondent, or sometimes the census representative, misunderstands a census question, and records an incorrect response or simply uses the wrong response box

(d) processing errors, which can occur at various steps including data capture, when responses are transferred from the census questionnaire in an electronic format, by optical character recognition methods or key-entry operators; coding, when ‘write-in’ responses are transformed into numerical codes; and imputation, when a ‘valid,’ but not necessarily correct, response is inserted into a record by the computer to replace missing or ‘invalid’ data (‘valid’ and ‘invalid’ referring to whether or not the response is consistent with other information on the record).

The above types of error each have both random and systematic components. These components may be significant.

Coverage errors

Coverage errors affect the accuracy of the census counts, that is, the sizes of the various census universes: population, families, households and dwellings. While steps have been taken to correct certain identifiable errors, the final counts are still subject to some degree of error because persons or dwellings have been missed, incorrectly enumerated in the census or counted more than once.

Missed dwellings or persons result in undercoverage. Dwellings can be missed because of the misunderstanding of collection unit boundaries, or because either they do not look like dwellings or they appear uninhabitable or they have recently been built or they are difficult to detect. Persons can be missed when their dwelling is missed or is classified as unoccupied, because the respondent misinterprets the instructions on
whom to include on the questionnaire or because the respondent was away during the census period. Some individuals may be missed because they have no usual residence and did not spend census night in a dwelling.

Dwellings or persons incorrectly enumerated or double-counted result in overcoverage. Overcoverage of dwellings can occur when structures unfit for habitation are listed as dwellings (incorrectly enumerated), when there is a certain ambiguity regarding the collection unit boundaries or when units (for example, rooms) are listed separately instead of being treated as part of one dwelling (double-counted). Persons can be counted more than once because their dwelling is double counted or because the guidelines on whom to include on the questionnaire have been misunderstood. Occasionally, someone who is not in the census population universe, such as a foreign resident or a fictitious person, may, incorrectly, be enumerated in the census. On average, overcoverage is less likely to occur than undercoverage and, as a result, counts of dwellings and persons are likely to be slightly underestimated.

For the 2011 Census, three studies are used to measure coverage error; the Dwelling Classification Survey, the Reverse Record Check Study, and the Census Overcoverage Study. Only the Dwelling Classification Survey is used to adjust the census counts.

In the Dwelling Classification Survey, a sample of dwellings listed as unoccupied were revisited to verify that they were correctly classified on Census Day. In addition, dwellings whose households were classified by census collection as not having responded and where classification had not been established were revisited to confirm whether they were occupied on Census Day or not. If either type were occupied, then the number of usual residents living there on Census Day was obtained. Subsequently, the misclassification of occupancy status of dwellings in the census counts was estimated.

Based on the results of the Dwelling Classification Survey, adjustments have been made to the final census counts to account for households and persons missed because their dwelling was incorrectly classified as unoccupied. The census counts are also adjusted for dwellings whose households were classified as non-responsive or unclassifiable. Despite these adjustments, the final counts are still subject to some undercoverage. The undercoverage tends to be higher for certain segments of the population, such as young adults (especially young adult males) and recent immigrants.

The Reverse Record Check Study is used to measure the residual undercoverage for Canada, and each province and territory. The Census Overcoverage Study is designed to investigate overcoverage errors from person enumerated more than once. The results of the Reverse Record Check and the Census Overcoverage Study, when taken together, furnish an estimate of net undercoverage.

Other sources of errors

While coverage errors affect the number of units in the different census universes, other errors affect the characteristics of those units.

Sometimes it is not possible to obtain a complete response from a household, even though the dwelling was identified as occupied. The household members may have been away throughout the census collection period or, in rare instances, the householder may have refused to complete the questionnaire. More frequently, the questionnaire is returned by mail or submitted through Internet but no response is provided to certain questions. Effort is devoted to ensure as complete a questionnaire as possible. An analysis is performed to detect significant cases of partial non-response and follow-up interviews are attempted to get the missing information. Despite this, at the end of the collection stage, a small number of responses are still missing. Although missing responses are eliminated during processing by replacing each one of them by the corresponding response for a 'similar' record, there remain some potential imputation errors. This is particularly serious if the non-respondents differ in some respects from the respondents; this procedure will then introduce a non-response bias.

Even when a response is obtained, it may not be entirely accurate. The respondent may have misinterpreted the question or may have guessed the answer, especially when answering on behalf of another, possibly absent, household member. The respondent may also have entered the answer in the wrong place on the questionnaire. Such errors are referred to as response errors. While response errors usually arise from inaccurate information provided by respondents, they can also result from mistakes by the census representative who completed certain parts of the questionnaire, or who followed up to obtain a missing response.
The images of the questionnaire pages are scanned and the information on the images is captured into a computer file. To monitor and to ensure that the number of data capture errors is within tolerable limits, a sample of fields is sampled and reprocessed. Analysis of the two captures is done. Unsatisfactory work is identified, corrected and appropriate feedback is done to the system in order to minimize their occurrence.

Some of the census questions require a written response. During processing, these ‘write-in’ entries are given a numeric code, either through an automated system that matches them to a coded set of write-ins from previous censuses, or manually by coders. Coding errors can occur when the written response is ambiguous, incomplete, or difficult to read. A quality assurance process is used to detect coding errors and measure quality. This involves selecting and re-coding an ongoing sample of coded responses. Discrepancies between the first and second code are sent to a third coder for arbitration. Feedback on errors is provided to help reduce further occurrences.

The data are edited where they undergo a series of computer checks to identify missing or inconsistent responses. These are replaced during the imputation stage of processing where either a response consistent with the other respondents’ data is inferred or a response from a similar donor is substituted. Imputation ensures a complete database where the data correspond to the census counts and facilitate multivariate analyses. Although errors may have been introduced during imputation, the methods used have been rigorously tested to minimize systematic errors.

Various studies are being carried out to evaluate the quality of the responses obtained in the 2011 Census. For each question, non-response rates and edit failure rates have been calculated. These can be useful in identifying the potential for non-response errors and other types of errors. Also, tabulations from the 2011 Census have been or will be compared with corresponding estimates from previous censuses, from sample surveys (such as the Labour Force Survey) and from various administrative records (such as birth registrations and municipal assessment records). Such comparisons can indicate potential quality problems or at least discrepancies between the sources.

In addition to these aggregate-level comparisons, there are some micro-match studies done, in which census responses are compared with another source of information at the individual record level. For certain ‘stable’ characteristics (such as age, sex, mother tongue), the responses obtained in the 2011 Census, for a sample of individuals, are being compared with those for the same individuals in the 2006 Census.

Confidentiality and random rounding

The figures shown in the tables have been subjected to a confidentiality procedure known as random rounding to prevent the possibility of associating statistical data with any identifiable individual. Under this method, all figures, including totals and margins, are randomly rounded either up or down to a multiple of ‘5.’ and in some cases ‘10.’ While providing strong protection against disclosure, this technique does not add significant error to the census data. The user should be aware that totals and margins are rounded independently of the cell data so that some differences between these and the sum of rounded cell data may exist. Also, minor differences can be expected in corresponding totals and cell values among various census tabulations. Similarly, percentages, which are calculated on rounded figures, do not necessarily add up to 100%. Order statistics (median, quartiles, percentiles, etc.) are computed in the usual manner.

Users should be aware of possible data distortions when they are aggregating these rounded data. Imprecision as a result of rounding tend to cancel each other out when data cells are re-aggregated. However, users can minimize these distortions by using, whenever possible, the appropriate subtotals when aggregating.

For those requiring maximum precision, the option exists to use custom tabulations. With custom products, aggregation is done using individual census database records. Random rounding occurs only after the data cells have been aggregated, thus minimizing any distortion.

In addition to random rounding, area suppression has been adopted to further protect the confidentiality of individual responses. Area suppression is the deletion of all characteristic data from the census for geographic areas with populations below 40 persons. However, if the census data refer to six-character postal codes or to
groups of either dissemination blocks or block-faces, they are suppressed if the total population in the area is
less than 100 persons.

In all cases, suppressed data are included in the appropriate higher aggregate subtotals and totals. The
suppression technique is being implemented for all products involving subprovincial data (i.e., Profile series,
basic cross-tabulations, semi-custom and custom data products).

For further information on the quality of census data, contact Statistics Canada's National Contact Centre at
1-800-263-1136.
Appendix D  Mother tongue and home language: classifications from 2011, 2006 and 2001

Changes have been made in the language classification used in our products. In this appendix, the 2011, 2006, and 2001 classifications are compared.

Please note that in the second part of the question on home language, the respondent had the option of marking the ‘No’ circle to indicate that there was no other language spoken on a regular basis.

The individual categories used in 2011 do not always match those used in 2006 and 2001. In most cases, however, the corresponding number can be obtained by adding all members of the language family.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2011 classification</th>
<th>2006 classification</th>
<th>2001 classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-official languages</td>
<td>Non-official languages</td>
<td>Non-official languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aboriginal languages</td>
<td>Aboriginal languages</td>
<td>Aboriginal languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algonquian languages</td>
<td>Algonquian languages</td>
<td>Algonquian languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algonquin</td>
<td>Algonquin</td>
<td>Algonquin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atikamekw</td>
<td>Atikamekw(^1)</td>
<td>Atikamekw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blackfoot</td>
<td>Blackfoot</td>
<td>Blackfoot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cree languages</td>
<td>Cree(^2)</td>
<td>Cree(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swampy Cree</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plains Cree</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woods Cree</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cree, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malecite</td>
<td>Malecite</td>
<td>Malecite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mi’kmaq</td>
<td>Mi’kmaq(^1)</td>
<td>Micmac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Innu/Montagnais</td>
<td>Montagnais-Naskapi(^3)</td>
<td>Montagnais-Naskapi(^3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naskapi</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ojibway</td>
<td>Ojibway</td>
<td>Ojibway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oji-Cree</td>
<td>Oji-Cree</td>
<td>Oji-Cree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algonquian languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Algonquian languages, n.i.e.(^4)</td>
<td>Algonquian languages, n.i.e.(^4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michif</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athapaskan languages</td>
<td>Athapaskan languages</td>
<td>Athapaskan languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrier</td>
<td>Carrier(^5)</td>
<td>Carrier(^5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wetsuweten</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chilcotin</td>
<td>Chilcotin</td>
<td>Chilcotin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Chipewyan</td>
<td>Chipewyan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dene(^6)</td>
<td>Dene</td>
<td>Dene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tlicho (Dogrib)(^7)</td>
<td>Dogrib</td>
<td>Dogrib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2011 classification</td>
<td>2006 classification</td>
<td>2001 classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gwich'in*</td>
<td>Kutchin-Gwich'in (Loucheux)</td>
<td>Kutchin-Gwich'in (Loucheux)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Slavey (Hare)**</td>
<td>North Slave (Hare)</td>
<td>North Slave (Hare)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Slavey*</td>
<td>South Slave</td>
<td>South Slave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slavey, n.o.s.*</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcee</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beaver</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sekani</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaska (Nahani)</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tahltan</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Tutchone</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Tutchone</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutchone, n.o.s.</td>
<td>Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haida</td>
<td>Haida</td>
<td>Haida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iroquoian languages</td>
<td>Iroquoian languages</td>
<td>Iroquoian languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mohawk</td>
<td>Mohawk</td>
<td>Mohawk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cayuga</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oneida</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kutenai</td>
<td>Kutenai</td>
<td>Kutenai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salish languages</td>
<td>Salish languages</td>
<td>Salish languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shuswap (Secwepemctsin)*</td>
<td>Shuswap</td>
<td>Shuswap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thompson (Ntlakapamux)</td>
<td>Thompson (Ntlakapamux)</td>
<td>Thompson (Ntlakapamux)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halkomelem</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lilooet</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Okanagan</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squamish</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straits</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salish languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Salish languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Salish languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siouan languages*</td>
<td>Siouan languages</td>
<td>Siouan languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dakota</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Dakota/Sioux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoney</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siouan languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tlingit</td>
<td>Tlingit</td>
<td>Tlingit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: n.o.s. = not otherwise specified

**Note: n.i.e. = not included elsewhere

---

Statistics Canada – Catalogue no. 98-301-X
2011 Census Dictionary
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2011 classification</th>
<th>2006 classification</th>
<th>2001 classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tsimshian languages</td>
<td>Tsimshian languages</td>
<td>Tsimshian languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gitksan</td>
<td>Gitksan</td>
<td>Gitksan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nisga’a</td>
<td>Nisga’a</td>
<td>Nishga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsimshian</td>
<td>Tsimshian</td>
<td>Tsimshian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wakashan languages</td>
<td>Wakashan languages</td>
<td>Wakashan languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nootka (Nuu-chah-nulth)</td>
<td>Nootka</td>
<td>Nootka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haisla</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heiltsuk</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kwakiutl (Kwak’wala)</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wakashan languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Wakashan languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Wakashan languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inuit languages</td>
<td>Inuktitut</td>
<td>Inuktitut (Eskimo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inuktitut</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inuinnaqtun</td>
<td>Inuinnaqtun</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inuvialuktun</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inuit languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romance languages</td>
<td>Romance languages</td>
<td>Romance languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portuguese</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romanian</td>
<td>Romanian</td>
<td>Romanian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalán</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romance languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Romance languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Romance languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germanic languages</td>
<td>Germanic languages</td>
<td>Germanic languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch</td>
<td>Dutch</td>
<td>Dutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flemish</td>
<td>Flemish</td>
<td>Flemish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frisian</td>
<td>Frisian</td>
<td>Frisian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yiddish</td>
<td>Yiddish</td>
<td>Yiddish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scandinavian languages</td>
<td>Scandinavian languages</td>
<td>Scandinavian languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danish</td>
<td>Danish</td>
<td>Danish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Icelandic</td>
<td>Icelandic</td>
<td>Icelandic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norwegian</td>
<td>Norwegian</td>
<td>Norwegian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swedish</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afrikaans</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germanic languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Germanic languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Germanic languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celtic languages</td>
<td>Celtic languages</td>
<td>Celtic languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaelic languages</td>
<td>Gaelic languages</td>
<td>Gaelic languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Welsh</td>
<td>Welsh</td>
<td>Welsh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celtic languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Celtic languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Celtic languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2011 classification</td>
<td>2006 classification</td>
<td>2001 classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slavic languages</td>
<td>Slavic languages</td>
<td>Slavic languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belarusian (Byelorussian)\textsuperscript{7}</td>
<td>Belarusian (Byelorussian)\textsuperscript{13}</td>
<td>Byelorussian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bosnian</td>
<td>Bosnian</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulgarian</td>
<td>Bulgarian</td>
<td>Bulgarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Croatian</td>
<td>Croatian</td>
<td>Croatian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Czech</td>
<td>Czech</td>
<td>Czech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macedonian</td>
<td>Macedonian</td>
<td>Macedonian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polish</td>
<td>Polish</td>
<td>Polish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serbian</td>
<td>Serbian</td>
<td>Serbian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serbo-Croatian</td>
<td>Serbo-Croatian</td>
<td>Serbo-Croatian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovak</td>
<td>Slovak</td>
<td>Slovak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovenian</td>
<td>Slovenian</td>
<td>Slovenian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ukrainian</td>
<td>Ukrainian</td>
<td>Ukrainian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slavic languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Slavic languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Slavic languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baltic languages</td>
<td>Baltic languages</td>
<td>Baltic languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latvian</td>
<td>Latvian\textsuperscript{1}</td>
<td>Latvian (Lettish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lithuanian</td>
<td>Lithuanian</td>
<td>Lithuanian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finno-Ugric languages</td>
<td>Finno-Ugric languages</td>
<td>Finno-Ugric languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estonian</td>
<td>Estonian</td>
<td>Estonian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finnish</td>
<td>Finnish</td>
<td>Finnish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungarian</td>
<td>Hungarian</td>
<td>Hungarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armenian</td>
<td>Armenian</td>
<td>Armenian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albanian\textsuperscript{17}</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Georgian\textsuperscript{17}</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkic languages</td>
<td>Turkic languages</td>
<td>Turkic languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azerbaijani</td>
<td>Azerbaijani</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkic languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Turkic languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Turkic languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mongolian\textsuperscript{17}</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2011 classification</td>
<td>2006 classification</td>
<td>2001 classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afro-Asiatic languages</td>
<td>Afro-Asiatic languages</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berber languages (Kabyle)</td>
<td>Berber languages (Kabyle)</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cushitic languages</td>
<td>Cushitic languages</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oromo</td>
<td>Oromo</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somali</td>
<td>Somali</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semitic languages</td>
<td>Semitic languages</td>
<td>Semitic languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amharic</td>
<td>Amharic</td>
<td>Amharic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabic</td>
<td>Arabic</td>
<td>Arabic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td>Hebrew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maltese</td>
<td>Maltese</td>
<td>Maltese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>Tigringa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tigrigna</td>
<td>Tigrigna</td>
<td>Tigringa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semitic languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Semitic languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Semitic languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indo-Iranian languages</td>
<td>Indo-Iranian languages</td>
<td>Indo-Iranian languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indo-Aryan languages</td>
<td>Indo-Aryan languages</td>
<td>Indo-Aryan languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bengali</td>
<td>Bengali</td>
<td>Bengali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gujarati</td>
<td>Gujarati</td>
<td>Gujarati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hindi</td>
<td>Hindi</td>
<td>Hindi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Konkani</td>
<td>Konkani</td>
<td>Konkani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marathi</td>
<td>Marathi</td>
<td>Marathi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panjabi (Punjabi)</td>
<td>Panjabi (Punjabi)</td>
<td>Punjabi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sindhi</td>
<td>Sindhi</td>
<td>Sindhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinhala (Sinhalese)</td>
<td>Sinhala (Sinhalese)</td>
<td>Sinhalese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urdu</td>
<td>Urdu</td>
<td>Urdu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nepali</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iranian languages</td>
<td>Iranian languages</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kurdish</td>
<td>Kurdish</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pashto</td>
<td>Pashto</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persian (Farsi)</td>
<td>Persian (Farsi)</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dravidian languages</td>
<td>Dravidian languages</td>
<td>Dravidian languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kannada</td>
<td>Kannada</td>
<td>Kannada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malayalam</td>
<td>Malayalam</td>
<td>Malayalam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tamil</td>
<td>Tamil</td>
<td>Tamil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telugu</td>
<td>Telugu</td>
<td>Telugu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dravidian languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Dravidian languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Dravidian languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2011 classification</td>
<td>2006 classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sino-Tibetan languages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese languages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cantonese</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaochow (Teochow)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fukien</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hakka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandarin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shanghainese</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taiwanese</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese, n.o.s. 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tibetan languages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burmese</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sino-Tibetan languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tai languages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lao</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thai</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austro-Asiatic languages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khmer (Cambodian)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not available</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malayo-Polynesian languages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisayan languages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ilocano</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malay</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pampango</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tagalog (Pilipino, Filipino)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bikol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malagasy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fijian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pangasinan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not available</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niger-Congo languages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Akan (Twi)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bantu languages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingala</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rundi (Kirundi)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda (Kinyarwanda)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shona</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swahili</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ganda</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bantu languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Igbo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Statistics Canada – Catalogue no. 98-301-X
2011 Census Dictionary
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language Type</th>
<th>2011 classification</th>
<th>2006 classification</th>
<th>2001 classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wolof</td>
<td>Wolof</td>
<td>Wolof</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bamanankan</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ewe</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ga</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>African languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>African languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>African languages, n.i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creoles</td>
<td>Creoles</td>
<td>Creoles</td>
<td>Creoles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-verbal languages</td>
<td>Non-verbal languages</td>
<td>Non-verbal languages</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Sign Language</td>
<td>American Sign Language</td>
<td>American Sign Language</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quebec sign language</td>
<td>Quebec sign language</td>
<td>Quebec sign language</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sign languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Sign languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Sign languages, n.i.e.</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other languages¹⁷</td>
<td>Other languages¹⁷</td>
<td>Other languages¹⁷</td>
<td>Other languages¹⁷</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere  
n.o.s. = not otherwise specified  
... = Somali was reclassified and placed under Cushitic languages in 2006.

Notes:

1. Spelling change only: content remains the same as in 2001.
2. This is equivalent to Cree, n.o.s., Swampy Cree, Plains Cree, Woods Cree, and Cree, n.i.e. in 2011.
3. This is equivalent to Innu/Montagnais and Naskapi in 2011.
4. This is equivalent to Algonquian languages, n.i.e. and Michif in 2011.
5. This is equivalent to Carrier and Wetsuweten in 2011.
6. This is equivalent to Dene and Chipewyan in 2006.
7. Name change only: content remains the same as in 2006.
8. North Slavey, South Slavey, and Slavey, n.o.s. are equivalent to North Slave and South Slave in 2006.
9. This is equivalent to Athapaskan languages, n.i.e. plus Sarcee, Beaver, Sekani, Kaska (Nahani), Tahltan, Northern Tutchone, Southern Tutchone, and Tutchone, n.o.s. in 2011.
10. This is equivalent to Iroquoian languages, n.i.e., Cayuga and Oneida in 2011.
11. This is equivalent to Salish languages, n.i.e., Halkomelem, Lillooet, Okanagan, Squamish, and Straits in 2011.
12. This is equivalent to Wakashan languages, n.i.e., Haisla, Heiltsuk, and Kwakiutl (Kwak'wala) in 2011.
13. Name change only: content remains the same as in 2001.
14. This is equivalent to Inuktitut, Inuvialuktun, and Inuit languages, n.i.e. in 2011.
15. This is equivalent to Romance languages, n.i.e. and Catalan in 2011.
16. This is equivalent to Germanic languages, n.i.e. and Afrikaans in 2011.
17. The Other languages in 2001 and 2006 is equivalent to Other languages, Albanian, Georgian, and Mongolian in 2011.
18. Somali was reclassified and placed under Cushitic languages in 2006.
19. This is equivalent to Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e. and Nepali in 2011.
20. Anyone responding 'Chinese,' with no other precision, along with other dialects, n.o.s.
21. This is equivalent to Sino-Tibetan languages, n.i.e. and Burmese in 2011.
22. This is equivalent to Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e., Bikol, Malagasy, Fijian, and Pangasinan in 2011.
23. This is equivalent to Bantu languages, n.i.e. and Ganda in 2011.
24. This is equivalent to Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e., Bamanankan, Ewe, and Ga in 2011.